Owner's manual

RCD 210, RCD 215

Replacement service schedule

up!

Edition: 11.2012
Item number: 132.5R1.BUP.20

Description of symbols

Refers to a section within a chapter that contains important information and safety notes that should always be observed.

Indicates that the section is continued on the next page.

Indicates the end of a section.

Indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.

Indicates a registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

Symbols like these refer you to warnings within the same section or on a given page. They draw your attention to possible risks of accident or injury and explain how they can be avoided.

Cross reference to information about possible damage to your vehicle within the same section or on a given page.

DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which will lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to slight or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which could cause vehicle damage if you do not observe the warning.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information on the protection of the environment.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Thank you for choosing Volkswagen

By purchasing this Volkswagen, you have become the owner of a vehicle fitted with the most up-to-date technology and a multitude of convenience functions for your use and enjoyment.

Before using your vehicle for the first time, please read and observe the information in this owner's manual. It will quickly help you to become familiar with your vehicle and all of its functions as well as making you aware of dangers to yourself and others and of how these dangers can be avoided.

If you have any further questions about your vehicle, or if you think that the vehicle wallet has not covered everything, please get in touch with your Volkswagen dealership. They will always be happy to deal with your questions, suggestions or problems.

We hope you enjoy driving your new vehicle. Happy motoring.

Volkswagen AG

About this owner's manual

- This owner's manual is valid for all models and versions of the up!.
- An alphabetical index is included at the end of this manual.
- A list of abbreviations at the end of the manual explains the abbreviations used.
- Directions and positions such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.
- Illustrations help with orientation and should be regarded as a general guide.
- This owner's manual was written for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles the controls may sometimes be different to those displayed in illustrations or described in the text ⇒ *Overview of the driver side*.
- Any technical changes made to the vehicle after publication of this booklet are contained in a supplement that is included with the vehicle wallet.

All equipment and models are described without indicating whether the equipment is optional or specific to the model type. This means that your vehicle may not have some of the equipment described, or it may only be available in certain markets. The scope of equipment fitted in your vehicle can be found in the sales documentation and you can contact your Volkswagen dealership for further information.

All data in this owner's manual correspond to the information available at the time of going to print. Because the vehicle is constantly being developed and further improved, there may be differences between your vehicle and the data in this owner's manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall form the basis for any legal claim.

Please ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle if you lend or sell the vehicle to someone else.

Standard booklets in the vehicle wallet:

- Service schedule
- Owner's manual

Additional booklets in the vehicle wallet (optional):

- Supplements
- Radio
- *Other supplements*

Overview of the vehicle

Exterior views

Side view

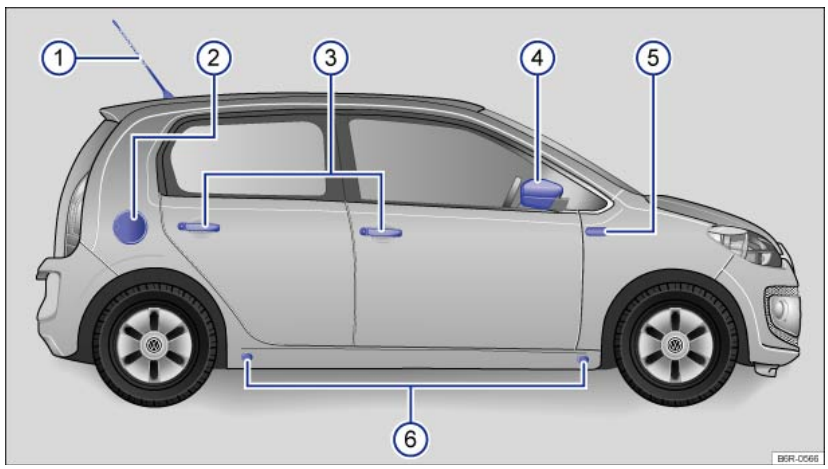


Fig. 1 Overview of the driver side

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 1*:

1 Roof aerial ⇒ *Consumer information*

2 Tank flap ⇒ *Filling the tank*

3 Exterior door release lever ⇒ *Doors*

4 Exterior mirrors ⇒ *Mirrors*

5 Additional turn signal ⇒ *Lights* ⇒ *Changing bulbs*

6 Jacking points ⇒ *Changing a wheel*

Front view

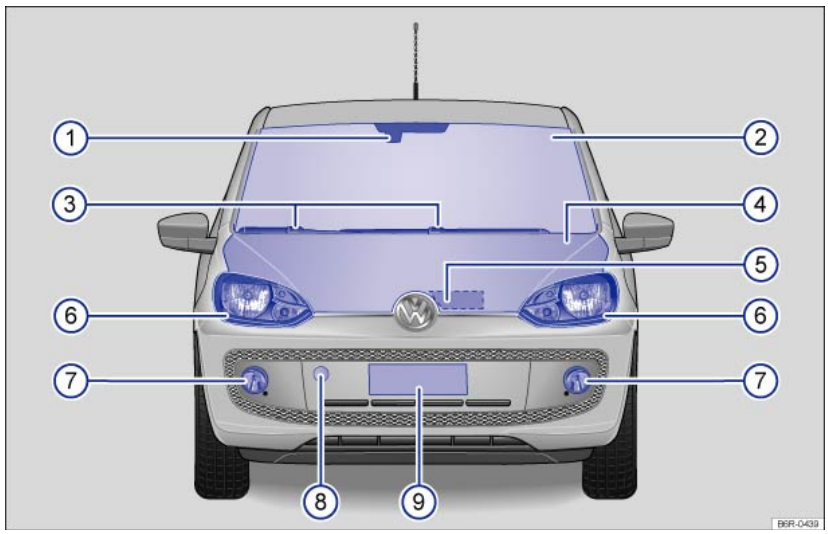


Fig. 2 Overview of the front of the vehicle

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 2*:

1 Mirror base with laser sensor for the city emergency brake function ⇒ *City emergency brake function*

2 Windscreen

3 Front windscreen wipers ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*

4 Bonnet ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*

5 Bonnet release lever ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*

6 Headlights ⇒ *Lights*, ⇒ *Changing bulbs*

7 Fog lights ⇒ *Lights* ⇒ *Changing bulbs*

8 Mounting for the front towing eye behind a cover ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*

9 Front number plate holder

Rear view

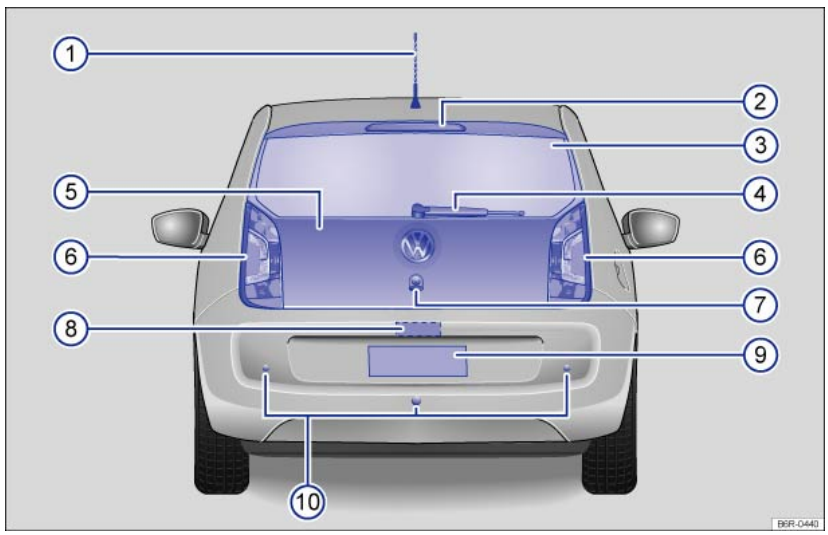


Fig. 3 Overview of the rear of the vehicle

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 3*:

1 Roof aerial ⇒ *Consumer information*

2 High-mounted brake light

3 Rear window

- Rear window heating ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

4 Rear wiper ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*

5 Tailgate ⇒ *Tailgate*

6 Tail light cluster ⇒ *Lights*⇒ *Changing bulbs*

7 Grip with tailgate release button ⇒ *Tailgate*

8 Number plate lights ⇒ *Changing bulbs*

9 Rear number plate holder

10 ParkPilot sensors ⇒ *ParkPilot*

Vehicle interior

Overview of the driver door

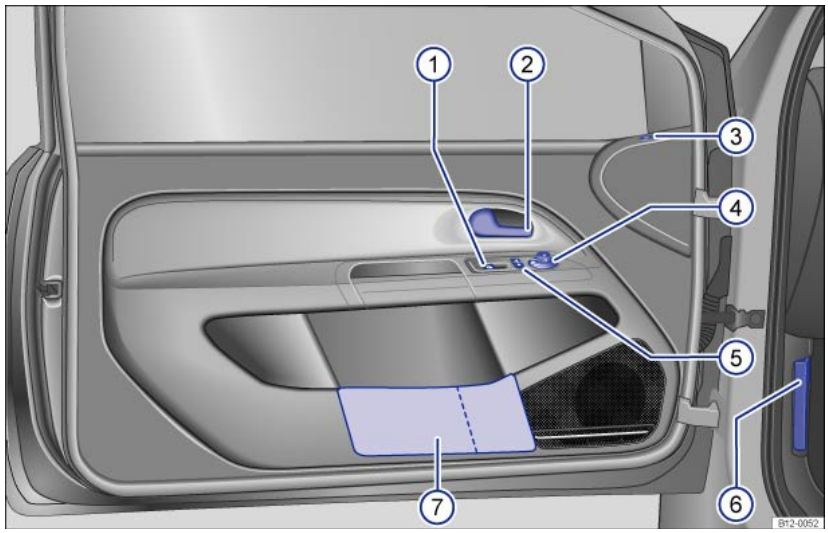


Fig. 4 Overview of the controls in the driver door (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 4*:

1 Button for operating the electric window in the driver door ⇒ *Windows* or stowage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*

2 Door release lever ⇒ *Doors*

3 Indicator lamp for SAFELOCK mechanism ⇒ *Central locking system*

4 Rotary knob for adjusting the electrical exterior mirrors ⇒ *Mirrors*

- Exterior mirror setting L-0-R

- Exterior mirror heating

5 Central locking button for locking and unlocking the vehicle ⇒ *Central locking system*

6 Handle for releasing the bonnet ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*

7 Stowage compartment with drink holder ⇒ *Stowage area*⇒ *Drink holder*

Other available control elements

Depending on the level of equipment, the vehicle may have manual windows and/or manual adjustment of the exterior mirrors ⇒ *Mirrors*.

Overview of the driver side

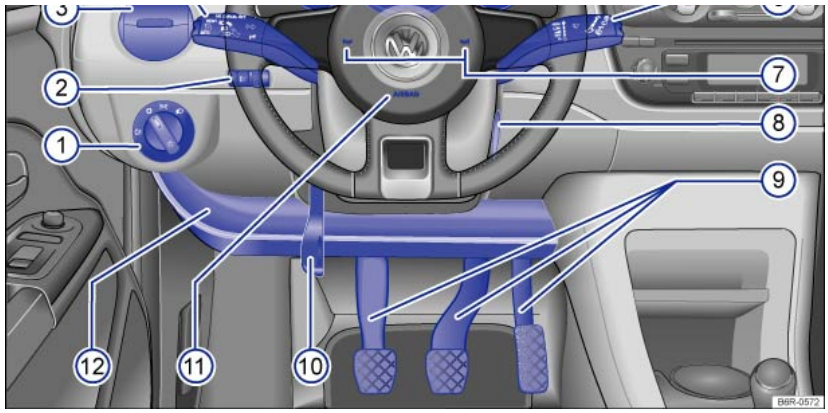


Fig. 5 Overview of the driver side (left-hand drive vehicles)

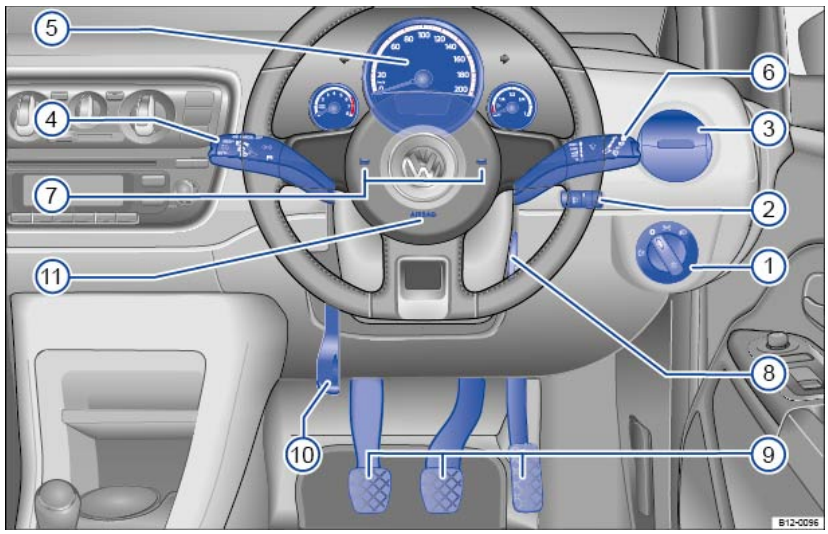


Fig. 6 Overview of the driver side (right-hand drive vehicles)

Key for *⇒ Fig. 5* and *⇒ Fig. 6*:

1 Light switch ⇒ *Lights*

- Light switched off or daytime running lights -0-
- Side light and dipped beam
- Fog lights

2 Headlight range control ⇒ *Lights*

3 Vent ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

4 Lever for: ⇒ *Lights*

- Main beam headlights
- Headlight flasher
- Turn signal
- Cruise control system (CCS) **ON** - **CANCEL** - **OFF** - **RES**/+ - **SET**/- ⇒ *Cruise control system (CCS)*

5 Instrument cluster:

- Instruments ⇒ *Instruments*
- Display ⇒ *Instruments*
- Warning and indicator lamps ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*

6 Lever for windscreen wipers and washers ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*

- Windscreen wipers **HIGH** - **LOW**
- Interval wipe for the windscreen ---
- Flick wipe 1x
- Windscreen wiper
- Wash and wipe system for the windscreen
- Rear wiper
- Wash and wipe system for the rear window

- Lever with buttons for operating the Volkswagen information system TRIP- , OK/ RESET ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*

7 Horn (works only when the ignition is switched on)

8 Ignition lock ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*

9 Pedals ⇒ *Changing gear*

10 Lever for adjusting the steering column ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*

11 Driver front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*

12 Stowage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*

Overview of the centre console

Upper section of the centre console

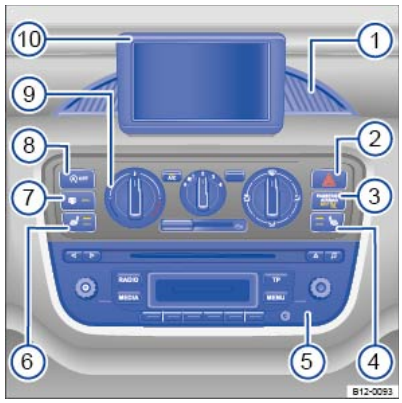


Fig. 7 Overview of the upper section of the centre console

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 7*:

1 Air vent, non-adjustable ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

2 Hazard warning lights button ⇒ *In an emergency*

3 Indicator lamp for the front passenger front airbag switch-off function PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF ⇒ *Airbag system*

4 Button for the right-hand seat heating ⇒ *Seat functions* or button for the rear window heating (alternative fitting location) ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

5 Radio (factory fitted) ⇒Booklet*Radio*,

6 Button for the left seat heating ⇒ *Seat functions*

7 Switch for rear window heating ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

8 Button for start/stop system OFF ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*

9 Controls for:

- Heating and fresh air system ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*
- Air conditioning system ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*

10 Portable navigation system ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

Lower section of the centre console

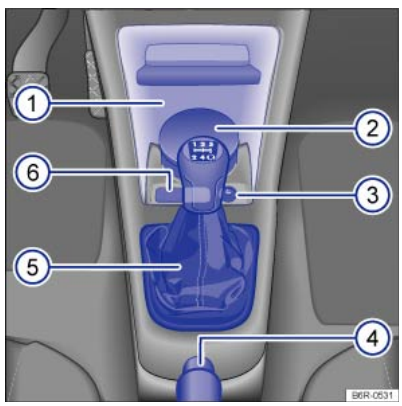


Fig. 8 Overview of the lower section of the centre console

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 8*:

1. Stowage compartment with drink holder in the centre console ⇒ *Drink holder*
2. Ashtray ⇒ *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*
3. 12-volt socket or cigarette lighter ⇒ *Socket* ⇒ *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*
4. Handbrake ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
5. Lever for:
   - Manual gearbox ⇒ *Changing gear*
   - Automated manual gearbox ⇒ *Changing gear*
6. Button for city emergency brake function OFF ⇒ *City emergency brake function*

Overview of the front passenger side

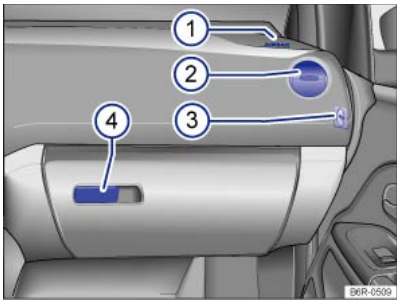


Fig. 9 Overview of the front passenger side (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 9*:

1. Location of front passenger front airbag in the dash panel ⇒ *Airbag system*
2. Vent ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*
3. To the side of the dash panel: key-operated switch for disabling the front passenger front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*
4. Opening lever for the stowage compartment or open stowage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*

Symbols in the roof

Symbol	Meaning
	Interior lights and reading lights ⇒ *Lights*
	Electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof ⇒ *Electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof*

Instrument cluster

Warning and indicator lamps

The warning and indicator lamps indicate various warnings ⇒⚠, faults ⇒(!) or certain functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out once the engine is running or the vehicle is in motion.

Acoustic warning signals are sounded when some warning or indicator lamps light up.

Symbol	Meaning ⇒⚠	See
(P)	Handbrake is applied.	
(!)	STOP **Do not drive on!** Brake fluid level too low or fault in the brake system.	⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
	Flashing: STOP **Do not drive on!** Coolant level too low, coolant temperature too high or coolant level system faulty.	⇒ *Coolant*
	Flashing: STOP **Do not drive on!** Engine oil pressure too low.	⇒ *Engine oil*
		⇒ *Steering*

Symbol	Meaning ⇒⚠	See
	STOP Do not drive on! The electromechanical steering is faulty or not working.	
	Driver or front passenger seat belt not fastened. There are objects on the front passenger seat.	⇒ *Seat belts*
	Fault in the alternator.	⇒ *Vehicle battery*
	Vehicles with start/stop system: manual engine start required.	⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
	Fault in the automated manual gearbox.	⇒ *Changing gear*
	Lit up: there is a fault in the ESC, or it has been switched of for system-related reasons **OR:** together with the ABS indicator lamp (ABS): ABS fault. **OR:** the vehicle battery has been reconnected.	
	Flashing: ESC/TCS is taking corrective action.	⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
	Lit up: Traction Control fault or switched off for system-related reasons. Flashes: Traction Control active.	
	ABS faulty or not functioning.	
	The rear fog light is switched on.	⇒ *Lights*
	Lit up or flashing: catalytic converter fault.	⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system*
EPC	Engine management system fault (Electronic Power Control).	
	Electromechanical steering function reduced.	⇒ *Steering*
	Petrol tank nearly empty.	⇒ *Filling the tank*
	Natural gas tank nearly empty.	⇒ *Filling the tank*
	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system.	⇒ *Airbag system*
	Automated manual gearbox overheated, or the gears cannot be selected correctly.	⇒ *Changing gear*
	Flashing: vehicle with an automated manual gearbox is not secured from rolling away.	Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear* Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
	Turn signal left or right.	⇒ *Lights*
	Hazard warning lights switched on.	⇒ *In an emergency*
	Cruise control system is controlling the speed.	⇒ *Cruise control system (CCS)*
	Depress the brake pedal.	Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear* Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated.	⇒ *Lights*
	Engine coolant temperature is too low in vehicles with natural gas engine.	⇒ *Coolant*
	Seat belt fastened for a rear seat passenger.	⇒ *Seat belts*
	Seat belt not fastened for a rear seat passenger.	
SAFE	Immobilizer active.	⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
INSP	After switching on the ignition: Display to indicate that a service is due soon.	⇒ *Instruments*
	Black ice warning. The outside temperature is below +4°C (+39°F).	
	Flashing quickly: City emergency brake function braking automatically or has braked automatically. Flashing slowly: City emergency brake function currently not available.	⇒ *City emergency brake function*
ON	City emergency brake function has been switched on manually. Switches off after approx. 5 seconds.	
OFF	City emergency brake function has been switched off manually.	
	Lit up: start/stop system is available. Flashing: start/stop system is not available.	⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
	Start/stop system is available, but an automatic engine stop is not possible.	

Symbol	Meaning ⇒⚠	See
N		⇒ *Changing gear*
	Flashing in conjunction with the remaining segments of the fuel tank display: fuel tank nearly empty.	⇒ *Filling the tank*
	Note about information in the vehicle wallet.	

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**
- **Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and ensure that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass or fuel.**
- **Broken-down vehicles increase the risk of accidents, both for you and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.**
- **Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down sufficiently.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Instruments

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Instrument overview*
⇒ *Displays*
⇒ *Service interval display*

When the outside temperature is low, the display in the instrument cluster may take slightly longer to appear than it does when the outside temperatures is higher.

Additional information and warnings:

- Warning and indicator lamps ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
- Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Display of the currently selected gear (manual gearbox) ⇒ *Changing gear*.
- Information on service intervals ⇒Booklet*Service schedule*,

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- **Never press the buttons on the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.**

Instrument overview

Fig. 10 Instrument cluster in the dash panel: type 1

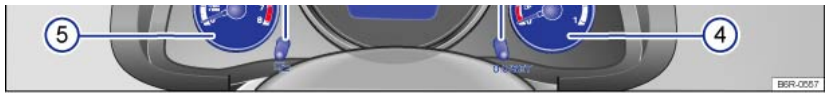


Fig. 11 Instrument cluster in the dash panel: type 2

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Depending on the equipment level, the scale divisions may look slightly different in type 2 ⇒ *Fig. 11* .

Descriptions of the instruments ⇒ *Fig. 10* or ⇒ *Fig. 11*:

(1) **Speedometer** in km/h or in mph and km/h, depending on vehicle.

(2) **Displays** ⇒ *Displays*.

(3) **Reset button** for the trip recorder display (**trip**).

- Press the 0.0/SET button *briefly* to switch between the trip recorder and the odometer.

- Press the 0.0/SET button *for about 5 seconds* to reset the trip recorder and any other indicators in the multifunction display ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*.

(4) **Fuel gauge** ⇒ *Filling the tank*.

(5) **Rev counter** (running engine speed in revolutions x 1,000 per minute).The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used in each gear when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. It is advisable to change up a gear or lift your foot off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red zone ⇒.

(6) **Setting button for the clock** or for switching between **outside temperature display and clock**.

- To set the clock, select the time display if not already selected. To do this, push the rocker switch ⇒ *Fig. 12②* up or down, or press setting button ⇒ *Fig. 11⑥*.

- Press and hold the button to mark the hour display so that it flashes.

- Press the 0.0/SET button to continue. Press and hold to scroll through quickly.

- Press the button again briefly to select the minute display so that it flashes.

- Press the 0.0/SET button to continue. Press and hold to scroll through quickly.

- Press the button again to finish setting the clock.

NOTICE

- **When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine.**
- **The needle on the rev counter should only briefly tip into the red area. Damage to the engine may otherwise be incurred.**

Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and minimise engine noise.

Other instruments, such as the outside temperature display, can be shown in the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.

Displays

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, a variety of information can be displayed in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Fig. 10②* or ⇒ *Fig. 11②*:

- Warning and information displays
- Distance displays
- Time
- Outside temperature
- Selector lever positions ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Gear-change indicator (manual gearbox) ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Multifunction display (MFD) ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Service interval display ⇒ *Service interval display*
- Start/stop system status display ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- Fuel gauge ⇒ *Filling the tank*
- Belt status display for the rear seats ⇒ *Seat belts*

Warning and information displays

The system checks certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Functional faults are indicated by warning symbols on the instrument cluster display (⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*). An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. Different instrument cluster designs will have different displays.

Distance displays

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *trip recorder* (**trip**) shows the distance travelled since the trip recorder was last reset. The final digit shows distances of 100 m.

Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature falls below +4°C (+39°F), the display also shows a snowflake symbol (ice warning). This symbol flashes and then remains constantly lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F) ⇒.

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

The measuring range lies between -40°C (-40°F) and +50 °C (+122°F).

Selector lever positions

The chosen selector lever position is indicated by luminous lettering on the selector lever. In position **D** the selected gear and the current position are shown in the instrument cluster display. In position M (Tiptronic) only the selected gear is shown ⇒ *Changing gear*.

Gear-change indicator (manual gearbox)

While the vehicle is in motion, the instrument cluster may show which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption ⇒ *Changing gear*.

Belt status display for the rear seats

Once the ignition has been switched on, the driver can see the belt status display in the instrument cluster display and therefore can tell whether or not the rear passengers have fastened their seat belts ⇒ *Seat belts*.

Start/stop system status display

The instrument cluster display shows information about the current status ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**
- **Broken-down vehicles increase the risk of accidents, both for you and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.**
- **Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and ensure that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass or fuel.**

WARNING

Streets and bridges can be iced over at outside temperatures above freezing point.

- **There may be black ice on the roads at outside temperatures above +4°C (+39°F) and also when no snowflake symbol is displayed as a black ice warning.**
- **You should never rely solely on the outside temperature display!**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

The design and content of displays may vary, as different instrument clusters are available.

If several warning reports are detected, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

Service interval display

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The service display is shown on the instrument cluster *⇒ Fig. 10* or *⇒ Fig. 11②*.

Service schedules at Volkswagen are divided into two categories, *with* oil change, e.g. interval service, and *without* oil change, e.g. inspection service. This service interval display only provides information on services that include oil change. The sticker on the door pillar of the vehicle and the service schedule booklet provide information on all other services, for example, the next inspection service or brake fluid service.

In vehicles with **service dependent on the time/distance travelled**, the service intervals are fixed.

Service

If a **service is due**, an acoustic signal will sound and a **service reminder** in text form INSP will appear for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. Volkswagen recommends that the scheduled service should be carried out within the next 100 km (approximately 62 miles).

Resetting the service interval display

If the service was not performed by a Volkswagen dealership, the display can be reset in the instrument cluster as follows:

Switch off the ignition.
Press and hold the 0.0/SET button.
Restart the ignition.
Release the 0.0/SET button and press it again briefly within approximately 10 seconds.

Do **not** reset the service interval display between service intervals otherwise incorrect data may be shown.

The service message will go out after a few seconds once the engine is running or when the OK button in the windscreen wiper level *⇒ Fig. 12①* is pressed.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected for long periods, the system will not be able to calculate the time when the next service is due. The service displays could then display incorrect information. If this is the case then please observe the maximum service intervals shown in ⇒Booklet*Service schedule*,.

Volkswagen information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ Using the displays in the instrument cluster
⇒ Multifunction display (MFD)

Various different displays can be accessed via the instrument cluster display once the ignition has been switched on.

The scope of the displays in the instrument cluster depends on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

A qualified workshop can program and modify other functions depending on the vehicle equipment level. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Additional information and warnings:

- Instrument cluster *⇒ Instrument overview*
- Exterior mirrors *⇒ Mirrors*
- Driver assist systems *⇒ Driver assist systems*
- Radio ⇒Booklet*Radio*,

WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- **Never open the displays in the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.**

In some vehicles other vehicle functions can be displayed on the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.

After starting the engine with a discharged vehicle battery, or after the battery has been changed, system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

Using the displays in the instrument cluster

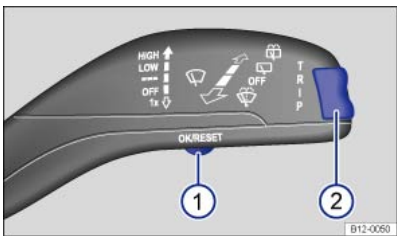


Fig. 12 The windscreen wiper lever: button ① to confirm and rocker switch ② to change the display

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Opening a display option

- Switch on the ignition.
- If a message or vehicle pictogram is displayed, press the OK button ⇒ *Fig. 12①*.
- Press the rocker switch ② up or down until the appropriate display option is shown.

Multifunction display (MFD)

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The multifunction display (MFD) is equipped with two automatic memories: **1 - Trip memory** and **2 - Total journey memory**. The number of the current memory on display will be shown in the lower right-hand corner of the display.

When the ignition is switched on and memory 1 or 2 is shown on the display, press the OK button to switch between the two memories.

1	Trip memory	The memory collects the travel and fuel consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is interrupted for more than two hours, the memory is automatically deleted. If the journey is continued within two hours of the ignition being switched off, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder.
2	Total journey memory	Depending on which instrument cluster is installed, the memory collects journey data for any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes travel time or 1,999.9 km (miles) distance travelled. Once these total limits have been reached, the memory will be deleted automatically and begin again at 0.

Possible displays

Menu	Function
Time[a)]	Current time in hours (h) and minutes (min).
Driving time	Driving time in hours (h) and minutes (min) that has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.
Current fuel consumption	While the vehicle is in motion, current consumption is displayed in l/100 km. When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary it is measured in litres/hour or, in vehicles with gas engines, in kg/h.
Average fuel consumption	The average fuel consumption will be shown in l/100km or, in vehicles with gas engines, in kg/100 km after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Fuel range	Approximate calculation of the distance in km that can still be travelled with the current fuel level under the current driving conditions. One factor used for calculating this figure is the current level of fuel consumption. **In natural gas engines:** the value with the ⛽ symbol shows the total distance in petrol mode. The value with the ⛽ symbol shows the total distance in petrol mode.
Distance driven	The distance travelled in km since the ignition was switched on.

Menu	Function
Average speed	The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Digital speed display	Current vehicle speed displayed digitally.
Digital coolant temperature display	Current temperature of the coolant temperature displayed digitally. If the **---.-** appears in the instrument cluster display and the red warning light flashes, there is a fault in the engine cooling system. **Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance.
Digital outside temperature display	Current outside temperature displayed digitally.
Speed warning --- km/h	If the saved speed (within the range of 30 km/h (18 mph) and 250 km/h (155 mph)) is exceeded, an acoustic warning will be given, along with a visible warning if required.

Switching between displays

- Press the rocker switch ⇒ *Fig. 12②* on the windscreen wiper lever.

Setting the clock[a)]

- Press and hold the OK button in the windscreen wiper lever ⇒ *Fig. 12①* to mark the hour display so that it flashes.
- Use the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever ⇒ *Fig. 12②* to make the settings. To do this, push the rocker switch up or down to increase or decrease the hours display.
- Press the OK button in the windscreen wiper lever again briefly to select the minute display so that it flashes.
- Use the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever to make the settings. To do this, push the rocker switch up or down to increase or decrease the minutes display.
- Press the OK button on the windscreen wiper lever briefly to finish setting the clock.

Settings for the clock can also be made directly using the setting buttons on the instrument cluster ⇒ .

Saving a speed for the speed warning

- Select the **Speed warning --- km/h** display.
- Press the OK button on the windscreen wiper lever to save the current speed and activate the warning system.
- If necessary, use the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever within approximately 5 seconds to set the desired speed. Then press OK again or wait a few seconds. The speed is now saved and the warning is activated.
- *To deactivate*, press OK . The set speed will be deleted.

Deleting memory 1 or 2 manually

- Select the memory that you wish to delete.
- Press and hold the OK button for approximately 2 seconds ⇒ *Fig. 12①*.

In some vehicles other functions in the multifunction display can be displayed on the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.

[a)] Type 2 instrument cluster only ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.

Before the journey

Before setting off

Driving tips

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Preparing for a journey and driving safely*
⇒ *Driving abroad*
⇒ *Driving through water on roads*

Depending on where the vehicle is used, it may be advisable to have an engine and transmission guard installed. An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle's underbody and engine oil sump, for example when driving over kerbs, driveways or unsurfaced roads. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Additional information and warnings:

- Sitting correctly and safely ⇒ *Sitting correctly and safely*
- Transporting ⇒ *Transporting*
- Starting the engine, changing gear and parking the vehicle ⇒ *Starting the engine, changing gear and parking*
- Driving with respect for the environment ⇒ *Driving with respect for the environment*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*

WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- **Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair perception, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**

Preparing for a journey and driving safely

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Checklist

Observe the following information both before and during the journey to ensure your own safety and the safety of passengers and other road users ⇒:

- ✓ Check that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
- ✓ Check the tyre pressure (Wheels and tyres) and fuel level (Filling the tank).
- ✓ Ensure that you have a good, clear view through all of the windows.
- ✓ Secure any objects and luggage in the stowage compartments, the luggage compartment or on the roof Driving notes.
- ✓ Ensure that you are able to operate the pedals freely at all times.
- ✓ Secure any children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and size Child seats (accessories).
- ✓ Adjust the front seats, head restraints and mirrors properly in accordance with the size of the occupants Adjusting the seat position, Mirrors.
- ✓ Wear shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.
- ✓ The floor mat in the footwell on the driver side must leave the pedal area free and must be securely fastened.
- ✓ Assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position while driving. This also applies to all passengers Adjusting the seat position.
- ✓ Fasten your seat belt correctly before setting off and keep it properly fastened throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers Seat belts.
- ✓ Each vehicle occupant must sit in a seat of their own and must have their own seat belt.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability is impaired, e.g. by medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic, e.g. by passengers, telephone calls, opening menus and making adjustments to settings.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Observe traffic regulations and speed limits.
- ✓ When travelling long distances, stop and take a break regularly – at least every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle using a system that is suitable for their weight and size.

WARNING

Always observe current traffic regulations and speed limits, and think ahead when driving. Correct interpretation of a driving situation can make the difference between reaching your destination safely and having an accident with serious injuries.

Servicing the vehicle is not only about vehicle maintenance – it also ensures that your vehicle remains roadworthy and in perfect working order. Servicing work should therefore be carried out in accordance with the service schedule. Some work may have to be carried out before the due date of the next service if the vehicle is subjected to severe operating conditions. Severe operating conditions are, for example, regular stop and go driving and driving in areas with high levels of dust. Further information can be obtained from your Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop.

Driving abroad

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Checklist

In some countries, special safety standards and emissions-related legislation apply that may differ from the construction of the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends that you visit your Volkswagen dealership before travelling abroad to find out about any legal requirements and the following issues at your destination:

- ✓ Are any technical modifications required for driving the vehicle abroad, e.g. masking the headlights?
- ✓ Are the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment and spare parts available for service and repair work?
- ✓ Are there any Volkswagen dealerships in the destination country?
- ✓ For petrol engines: is unleaded petrol with the correct octane number available?
- ✓ And for gas engines: is compressed natural gas (CNG) available Fuel?
- ✓ Are the correct engine oil (Engine oil) and other service fluids that comply with Volkswagen specifications available in the destination country?
- ✓ Will the portable navigation unit Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts work with the navigation data available in the destination country?
- ✓ Are special tyres necessary for travelling in the destination country?

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of Genuine Parts.

Driving through water on roads

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Please follow these rules to help prevent damage to your vehicle when driving through water, for example if the road is flooded:

- Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water level must be **no higher** than the lower edge of the vehicle body ⇒.
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.
- Oncoming vehicles create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.
- When driving through water, always switch off the start/stop system ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush etc., the brakes may react slowly and the braking distance will be increased as the brake discs and pads will be wet, or possibly iced up in winter.

- **You can dry and de-ice the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal regulations when doing so.**
- **Avoid abrupt and sudden braking manoeuvres directly after driving through water.**

NOTICE

- **If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, such as the engine, drive train, running gear and vehicle electrics, could sustain severe damage.**
- **Never drive through salt water as salt can cause corrosion. Rinse all components that have been exposed to salt water immediately with fresh water.**

Technical data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Vehicle identification data*

⇒ *Engine data*

⇒ *Dimensions*

⇒ *Performance figures*

The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule or the vehicle registration documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data. All data in this manual apply to the basic model. The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Additional information and warnings:

- Transporting ⇒ *Driving notes*
- Driving with respect for the environment ⇒ *Driving with respect for the environment*
- Fuel ⇒ *Fuel*
- Engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*
- Engine coolant ⇒ *Coolant*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*

WARNING

Ignoring or exceeding the values given for the weights, payloads, vehicle dimensions and maximum speed could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

Vehicle identification data

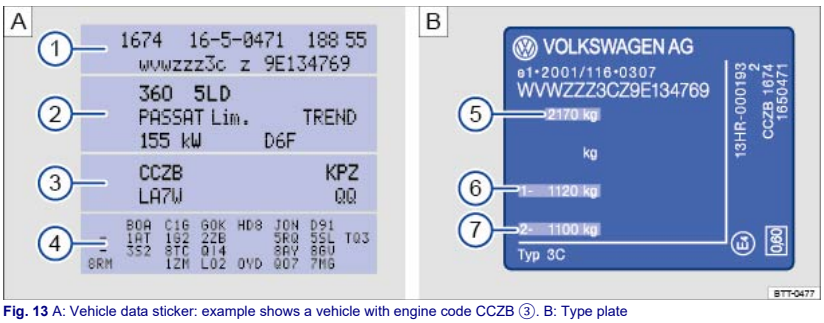


Fig. 13 A: Vehicle data sticker: example shows a vehicle with engine code CCZB ③. B: Type plate

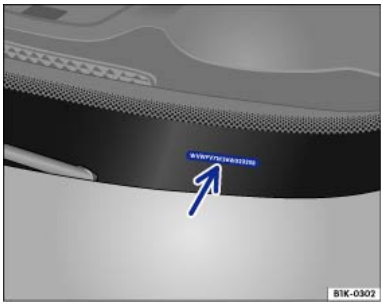


Fig. 14 Vehicle identification number

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Vehicle identification number (FIN)

The vehicle identification number can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen ⇒ *Fig. 14*. The viewer is located in the lower corner of the windscreen. The vehicle identification number is also stamped on the right suspension turret. You have to open the bonnet ⚠ to gain access to the vehicle identification number ⇒ .

Additional vehicle identification for China

In Chinese vehicles, the following body components are marked with the vehicle identification number (VIN) or with a number that can be traced back to the VIN:

- Rear lock carrier (in the luggage compartment)
- Bonnet
- Right longitudinal member (in the engine compartment)
- Tailgate
- Door pillar (front passenger side)
- Floor panel (in the front passenger side footwell)

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ *Fig. 13* **A** is in the spare wheel well area in the luggage compartment. It contains the following data:

① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)

② Vehicle type, engine power, gearbox type

(3) Engine and gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment. In the example, the engine code is CCZB ⇒ *Fig. 13***A**.

(4) Optional extras, PR numbers

These vehicle data are also contained in the service schedule.

Type plate

The type plate ⇒ *Fig. 13* **B** can be seen on the lower part of the door pillar when the door is open. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

The type plate contains the following data:

(5) Gross vehicle weight rating

(6) Gross axle weight rating, front

(7) Gross axle weight rating, rear

Engine data

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the power output and performance of some engines may vary in some countries from the information given in this booklet.

Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
44 kW at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm	CHYA	95 Nm at 1,750 – 3,000 rpm	3 cylinders, 999 ccm
55 kW at 6,200 rpm	CHYB	95 Nm at 3,000 – 4,300 rpm	3 cylinders, 999 ccm

Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Maximum torque	Cylinders, capacity
50 kW at 6,200 rpm	CPGA	90 Nm at 3,000 rpm	3 cylinders, 999 ccm

Dimensions

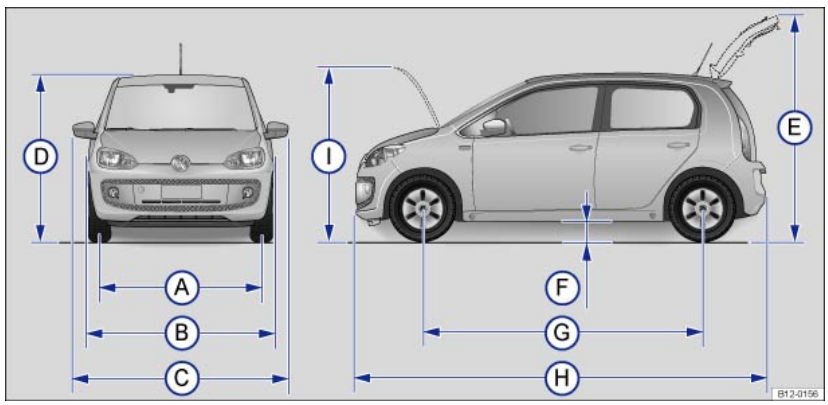


Fig. 15 Dimensions

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The data in the table apply to the most basic German model.

The specified values can vary due to different tyre and wheel sizes, if additional equipment is fitted, for different model versions, for retrofitted accessories, and for special vehicles. They can also vary in vehicles that have been manufactured for other countries.

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 15*:		Petrol engine	Natural gas engine
Ⓐ	Front track	1,428 mm	
	Rear track	1,424 mm	
Ⓑ	Width (2-door)	1,641 mm	

Key for ⇒ *Fig. 15*:		Petrol engine	Natural gas engine
	Width (4-door)	1,645 mm	
Ⓒ	Width (from one exterior mirror to the other)	1,910 mm	
Ⓓ	Height to the upper edge of the roof at kerb weight [a]	1,478 mm	1,480 mm
	Hight at kerb weight [a] to the upper edge of the aerial base [b]	1,489 mm	1,492 mm
Ⓔ	Height with open tailgate at kerb weight [a]	1,990 mm	1,994 mm
Ⓕ	Ground clearance in road-ready state [c] between the axles	144 mm	145 mm
Ⓖ	Wheelbase	2,407 mm	2,413 mm
Ⓗ	Length (from bumper to bumper)	3,543 mm	
Ⓘ	Height with open bonnet and kerb weight [a]	1,622 mm	
–	Minimum turning circle diameter	Approximately 9.8 m	

NOTICE

- **Take care when driving in car parks with protruding kerbstones or bollards. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle.**
- **Drive carefully through dips in the road, over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.**

[a] Kerb weight without driver, without payload.

[b] Without rod antenna screwed on.

[c] Kerb weight with driver (75 kg) and service fluids.

Performance figures

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the power output and performance of some engines may vary in some countries from the information given in this booklet.

Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum speed
44 kW	CHYA	MG5	160 km/h (100 mph) [a]
44 kW BlueMotion technology			161 km/h (100 mph) [a]
44 kW		AG5	160 km/h (100 mph) [a]
55 kW	CHYB	MG5	171 km/h (106 mph) [a]
55 kW BlueMotion technology			172 km/h (106 mph) [a]
55 kW		AG5	171 km/h (106 mph) [a]

Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Maximum speed
50 kW BlueMotion technology	CPGA	MG5	164 km/h (102 mph) [b]

When the performance figures were measured, the vehicle was not fitted with any equipment that could reduce performance, e.g. a roof carrier or mud flaps.

[a] Maximum speed is reached in 4th gear.

[b] Maximum speed is reached in 4th gear.

Opening and closing

Vehicle key set

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Vehicle key*
⇒ *Mechanical vehicle key*
⇒ *Indicator lamp in the vehicle key*
⇒ *Replacing the battery*
⇒ *Synchronising the vehicle key*

Additional information and warnings:

- Settings in the Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Central locking system ⇒ *Central locking system*
- Starting and stopping the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*
- Manual opening and closing⇒ *Manual opening and closing*

DANGER

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm or other lithium batteries can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- **Always keep the vehicle key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of the reach of children.**
- **Call for medical help immediately you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.**

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.

- **Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and tailgate, start the engine, switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**
- **Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.**

Vehicle key

Fig. 16 Vehicle key

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Vehicle key

The key can be used to lock and unlock the car from a distance ⇒ *Central locking system*.

The remote control transmitter and the battery are integrated in the key. The receiver is located in the vehicle interior. The remote control range is several metres around the vehicle when the battery is fully charged.

If the vehicle cannot be opened and closed using the vehicle key, the vehicle key will have to be re-synchronised ⇒ *Synchronising the vehicle key*, or the battery in the key replaced ⇒ *Replacing the battery*.

Several vehicle keys can be used.

Opening and closing the key bit

Press button ⇒ *Fig. 16*① to release the key bit and open it.

To *fold in*, press button ① and simultaneously fold in the key bit until it clicks into place.

Replacement key

You will need to quote the vehicle chassis number when ordering a replacement key or additional remote control keys.

Every new key contains a microchip which must be encoded with the data for the vehicle's electronic immobilizer. The vehicle key will not work if it is not fitted with a microchip, or if the microchip has not been encoded. The same goes for keys that have been cut to fit the vehicle.

New keys or replacement keys are available from Volkswagen dealerships or from qualified workshops and authorised key services that are qualified to manufacture these vehicle keys.

New and replacement vehicle keys must be synchronised before use. Proceed to a qualified workshop.

NOTICE

Every vehicle key contains electronic components. Protect the key from damage, moisture and excessive vibration.

Press the buttons on the key only if the corresponding function is actually needed. Pressing a button when the function is not required could lead to the vehicle being unlocked unintentionally or the alarm going off. This also applies even when you are not within the effective range.

The function of the vehicle key can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. a two-way radio or mobile telephone).

Obstacles between the key and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and weak batteries can reduce the range of the remote control.

If the buttons on the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 16* or one of the central locking buttons ⇒ *Central locking system* are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle will then be unlocked. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

Mechanical vehicle key

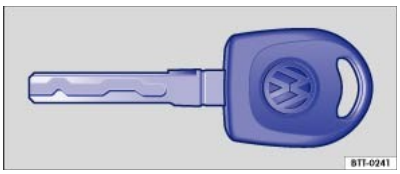


Fig. 17 Mechanical vehicle key

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

A mechanical vehicle key may be included in the set of keys ⇒ *Fig. 17*.

Replacement key

You will need to quote the vehicle chassis number when ordering a replacement key or additional remote control keys.

Every new key contains a microchip which must be encoded with the data for the vehicle's electronic immobilizer. The vehicle key will not work if it is not fitted with a microchip, or if the microchip has not been encoded. The same goes for keys that have been cut to fit the vehicle.

New keys or replacement keys are available from Volkswagen dealerships or from qualified workshops and authorised key services that are qualified to manufacture these vehicle keys.

New and replacement vehicle keys must be synchronised before use. Proceed to a qualified workshop.

Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

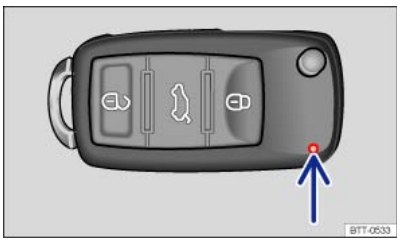


Fig. 18 Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

If a button on the vehicle key is pressed briefly, the indicator lamp ⇒ *Fig. 18* (arrow) flashes once. The lamp will flash several times if the button is pressed and held, e.g. convenience closing of the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof.

If the indicator lamp in the key does not light up when a button is pressed, the battery in the key should be replaced ⇒ *Replacing the battery*.

Replacing the battery

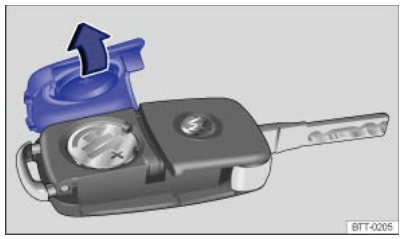


Fig. 19 Vehicle key: opening the battery case cover

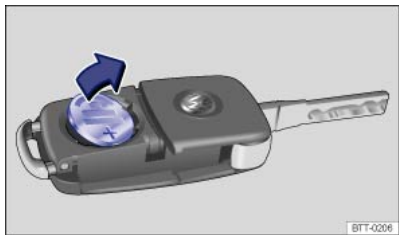


Fig. 20 Vehicle key: removing the battery

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Volkswagen recommends having the battery changed by a qualified workshop.

The battery is located on the rear side of the vehicle key underneath a cover.

Replacing the battery

- Fold out the key bit of the vehicle key ⇒ *Opening and closing the key bit*.
- Pull up the cover on the rear side of the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 19* in the direction of the arrow ⇒.
- Using a suitable thin object, lever the battery out of the battery compartment ⇒ *Fig. 20*.
- Insert the new battery as shown ⇒ *Fig. 20* and push it into the battery compartment against the direction of the arrow ⇒.
- Fit the cover as shown ⇒ *Fig. 19* and push it onto the vehicle key housing against the direction shown by the arrow until it engages.

NOTICE

- **The vehicle key can be damaged if the battery is not changed properly.**
- **Unsuitable batteries can damage the vehicle key. Discharged batteries should only be replaced with new batteries of the same voltage rating, size and specification.**
- **Ensure that the battery is fitted the right way round.**

Dispose of discharged batteries in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.

The battery on the vehicle key may contain perchlorate. Please comply with any legal requirements and regulations when handling and disposing of these batteries.

Synchronising the vehicle key

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

It may no longer be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle with the remote control if the button is pressed repeatedly outside of the effective range of the vehicle key. If this is the case, the vehicle key should be re-synchronised as follows:

- Fold out the key bit of the vehicle key ⇒ *Opening and closing the key bit*.

- Press the button on the vehicle key. Remain standing close to the vehicle.
- Unlock the vehicle with the key bit within one minute. The synchronisation process is complete.

Central locking system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Description of the central locking system*
⇒ *Locking or unlocking the vehicle from outside*
⇒ *Locking or unlocking the vehicle from the inside*
⇒ *SAFELOCK mechanism*

The central locking system will only work correctly when all doors and the tailgate are properly closed. The vehicle *cannot* be locked with the key if the driver door is open.

If the vehicle is unlocked and not used for a long time (e.g. in your own garage) the vehicle battery could discharge or the engine may not start.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Vehicle key set ⇒ *Vehicle key set*
- Doors ⇒ *Doors*
- Tailgate ⇒ *Tailgate*
- Electric windows ⇒ *Windows*
- Electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof ⇒ *Electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof*
- Manual opening and closing ⇒ *Manual opening and closing*

WARNING

Improper use of the central locking system could lead to serious injury.

- **The central locking system locks all doors. Locking the vehicle from the inside may prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally and unauthorised persons from entering the vehicle. However, locked doors can delay assistance to passengers inside the vehicle in the event of an accident or emergency.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**
- **Never leave anyone inside a locked vehicle. People in the vehicle could become trapped in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.**

Description of the central locking system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The central locking system enables you to lock and unlock all doors and the tailgate from one point:

- From outside the vehicle with the vehicle key ⇒ *Locking or unlocking the vehicle from outside*.
- From inside the vehicle with the central locking button ⇒ *Locking or unlocking the vehicle from the inside*.

Certain functions for the central locking system can be activated or deactivated by a qualified workshop.

The doors and the tailgate can be locked or unlocked manually if the vehicle key or central locking system fails.

Locking the vehicle after the airbags have been triggered

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are activated during an accident. After an accident, the vehicle can be locked by one of the methods below, depending on the damage incurred.

Function	Action
Locking the vehicle **with the central locking button**.	– Switch off the ignition. – Open one of the vehicle doors once. – Press the central locking button .
Locking the vehicle **using the vehicle key**.	– Switch off the ignition. **OR:** remove the key from the ignition lock. – Open one of the vehicle doors once. – Lock the vehicle with the vehicle key.

If the buttons on the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 21* or one of the central locking buttons ⇒ *Fig. 23* are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked for approximately 30 seconds. If the doors or the tailgate are not opened during this time the vehicle will lock again automatically.

Locking or unlocking the vehicle from outside

Fig. 21 Buttons on the vehicle key

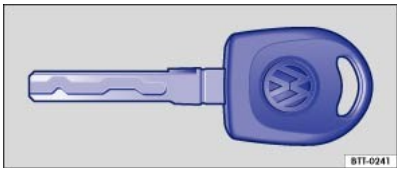


Fig. 22 Mechanical vehicle key

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Vehicles with central locking

Function	Buttons to be used in the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 21*	Action with vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 21* in the lock cylinder or with the mechanical vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 22*.
Unlocking the vehicle.	Press the button.	Insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock cylinder and turn **anticlockwise**.
Locking the vehicle.	Press the button.	Insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock cylinder and turn **clockwise**.
Unlocking the tailgate.	Press the button ⇒ *Tailgate*.	Insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock cylinder and turn **anticlockwise**.

Please note the following: Depending on which central locking function has been activated by a qualified workshop, all of the doors and the tailgate are only unlocked when the button is pressed twice.

The vehicle key will lock or unlock the vehicle only when the battery has enough power and the key is located within a few metres of the vehicle.

- When the vehicle is locked, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, all turn signals will flash *twice* as confirmation.

If the turn signals *do not* flash as confirmation, at least one of the doors or the tailgate is not closed.

The vehicle cannot be locked using the vehicle key if the driver door is still open. The vehicle will lock again automatically within a few seconds of being unlocked if you do not open one of the doors or the tailgate. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.

Vehicles without central locking

Function	Action carried out with key ⇒ *Fig. 22* in the lock cylinder.
Locking or unlocking the driver door and the tailgate.	To *unlock*, insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock cylinder and turn **anticlockwise**.
	To *lock*, insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock cylinder and turn **clockwise**.
Locking and unlocking the front passenger door.	To *unlock*, insert the vehicle key in the passenger door lock cylinder and turn **anticlockwise**.
	To *lock*, insert the vehicle key in the front passenger door lock cylinder and turn **clockwise**.

The opened driver door cannot be locked using the vehicle key.

In vehicles without a central locking system, locking and unlocking the passenger door does not affect the interior light ⇒ *Lights*.

Locking or unlocking the vehicle from the inside

Fig. 23 In the driver door: central locking button

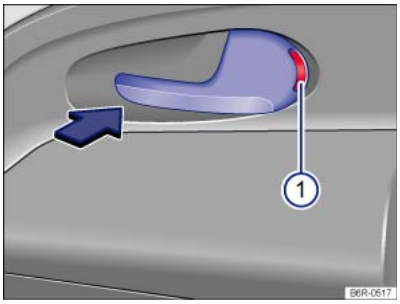


Fig. 24 In the front passenger door: door opening lever for mechanical locking

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Vehicles with central locking

Press the button *⇒ Fig. 23*:	
	Unlocks the vehicle.
	Locks the vehicle.

The central locking button functions with the ignition switched on or off only when *all* doors are closed.

If the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key, the central locking button does not work.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock the vehicle:

- The SAFELOCK mechanism **will not** be activated ⇒ *SAFELOCK mechanism*.
- It is not possible to open the doors or tailgate from the *outside*, for instance when stopped at traffic lights.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle. You may have to pull the door release lever more than once.
- If the driver door is open, it will not be locked. This prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.

Vehicles without central locking

In vehicles without central locking, the doors are locked by pushing in the door opening lever so that the red marking becomes visible ⇒ *Fig. 24①*.

Pull the appropriate door opening lever to unlock a door.

The following applies when the vehicle is locked:

- The SAFELOCK mechanism **will not** be activated ⇒ *SAFELOCK mechanism*.
- It is not possible to open the doors from *outside*, for instance when stopped at traffic lights.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle.
- An open driver door cannot be locked. This prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.

SAFELOCK mechanism

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Function	Action
	Press the button on the vehicle key *once*.

Function	Action
Locking the vehicle and activating the SAFELOCK mechanism.	
Locking the vehicle without activating the SAFELOCK mechanism.	Press the button on the vehicle key *twice*.
	Press the central locking button in the driver door once.

The SAFELOCK mechanism deactivates the door opening levers if the vehicle has been locked. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside ⇒.

In some vehicles, when the ignition is switched off, the instrument cluster display may inform you that the SAFELOCK mechanism is activated.

The following applies when the SAFELOCK mechanism is deactivated:

- The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using the door release lever.

Indicator lamp in the driver door

After locking the vehicle:	Meaning
A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds, firstly at short intervals and then more slowly.	The SAFELOCK mechanism is activated.
A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds and then switches off. The light starts to flash again after approximately 30 seconds.	The SAFELOCK mechanism is deactivated.
A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds in short intervals. The lamp will then light up without interruption for approximately 30 seconds.	Fault in the locking system. Proceed to a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Always take care when using the SAFELOCK mechanism otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries.

- **Never leave anybody in the vehicle if the vehicle has been locked using the vehicle key. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside once the SAFELOCK mechanism is activated.**
- **Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency service personnel to gain access to the vehicle and provide assistance when needed. In an emergency, people locked inside the vehicle would not be able to leave the vehicle by unlocking the doors.**

Doors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Childproof lock*

Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set ⇒ *Vehicle key set*
- Central locking system ⇒ *Central locking system*
- Manual opening and closing ⇒ *Manual opening and closing*

WARNING

Any door that is not properly closed could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe injuries.

- **Stop as soon as possible and close the door.**
- **Ensure that the door is properly closed and that the lock has engaged. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.**
- **Doors should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.**

WARNING

Any door being held open by the door arrester could close unexpectedly in strong winds or if the vehicle is on a slope. This could lead to injuries.

- **Always keep a good grip on the handle when opening and closing doors.**

In some vehicles it is possible to set the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts* to display whether at least one vehicle door is open or not properly closed.

Childproof lock

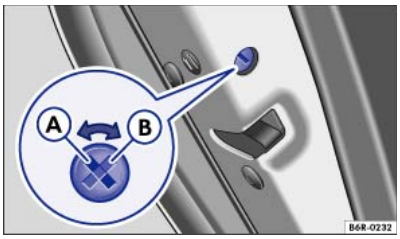


Fig. 25 In the left rear door: childproof lock Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on

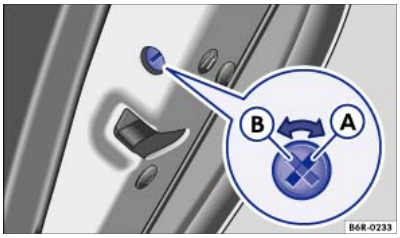


Fig. 26 In the right rear door: childproof lock Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside, e.g. so that children cannot open the doors accidentally while the vehicle is in motion. When the childproof lock is activated the door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the childproof lock on or off

- Unlock the vehicle and open the appropriate rear door.
- Fold the key bit out of the vehicle key.
- Use the key bit to turn the slot to the required position.

Slot position *⇒ Fig. 25* or *⇒ Fig. 26*:

Ⓐ Childproof lock is switched off.

Ⓑ Childproof lock is switched on.

⚠ WARNING

When the childproof lock is activated, the door cannot be opened from the inside.

- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that these people lock themselves in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**

Tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ Opening the tailgate
⇒ Closing the tailgate

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views *⇒ Exterior views*
- Central locking system *⇒ Central locking system*
- Transporting *⇒ Driving notes*
- Manual opening and closing *⇒ Manual opening and closing*

WARNING

Incorrect and unsupervised unlocking, opening or closing of the tailgate can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Therefore the tailgate should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its path.**
- **Never close the tailgate by pushing it down with your hand on the window. The rear window could shatter and cause injuries.**
- **After closing the tailgate, check to ensure that it is closed and locked correctly so that it does not open while the vehicle is in motion. The closed tailgate must be flush with the surrounding body panels.**
- **Always keep the tailgate closed while the vehicle is in motion so that no toxic exhaust fumes can enter the vehicle interior.**
- **Never open the tailgate if a load is attached to it, e.g. a rack or luggage carrier. It may also not possible to open the tailgate if there are objects attached to it, e.g. bicycles. The additional load might cause the open tailgate to close by itself. Support the tailgate as necessary or remove the load from the surface.**
- **Close and lock the tailgate and all vehicle doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the tailgate is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the tailgate, thereby trapping themselves inside. Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could use the vehicle key or central locking button to lock the vehicle and thereby trap themselves inside.**

NOTICE

Before opening the tailgate, please check that there is enough space to open and close the tailgate, e.g. when in a garage.

In some vehicles it is possible to set the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts* to display whether the tailgate is open or not properly closed.

Opening the tailgate

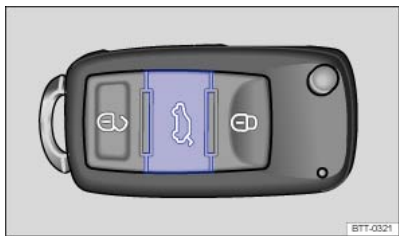


Fig. 27 In the vehicle key: tailgate release button

Fig. 28 Opening the tailgate from the outside

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

It will not be possible to open the tailgate if, for example, bicycles are mounted on a carrier attached to it ⇒. Remove the load from the carrier and support the open tailgate.

Opening with the central locking system

- Press the button in the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 27* for approximately one second to unlock the tailgate.
- Press the button ⇒ *Fig. 28①* and lift the tailgate using the grip ②.

Opening with the mechanical vehicle key

- Unlock the vehicle or the driver door ⇒ *Central locking system*.
- Press the button ⇒ *Fig. 28①* and lift the tailgate using the grip ②.

WARNING

Serious injuries can occur if the tailgate is unlocked or opened incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- **It may not always be apparent that the tailgate is unlocked, for example when a loaded luggage carrier is attached to it. If unlocked, the tailgate may open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion.**

At outside temperatures of less than 0°C (+32°F), the gas-filled struts cannot always lift the opened tailgate automatically. The tailgate then has to be guided up by hand.

Closing the tailgate

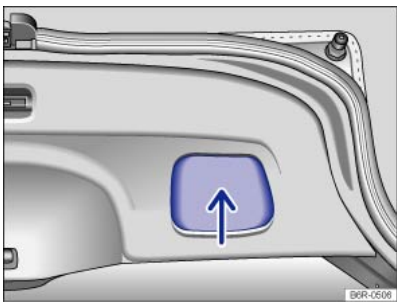


Fig. 29 Open tailgate: handle recess for closing the tailgate

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Closing the tailgate

- Grip the handle in the interior trim of the tailgate ⇒ *Fig. 29* (arrow).
- Pull the tailgate down with some force until it engages in the lock. Please ensure that no one has their hands in the direct path of the tailgate as it moves ⇒⚠.
- Pull the tailgate to ensure that it is engaged securely.

Locking the tailgate using the central locking system

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the tailgate approximately 30 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.

The tailgate can only be locked when it is properly closed and engaged.

- The tailgate is also locked by the central locking system.
- If the tailgate of the locked vehicle is unlocked using the button in the vehicle key, it will lock again as soon as it is closed.
- If the tailgate is closed but not locked, it will lock automatically once the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Locking the tailgate using the mechanical vehicle key

The tailgate can only be locked when it is properly closed and engaged.

- Insert the vehicle key in the driver door lock cylinder and turn **clockwise**⇒ *Central locking system*.

WARNING

Serious injuries can occur if the tailgate is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- **Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the tailgate is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the tailgate, thereby trapping themselves inside. Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This could cause serious injuries or illness, or even have fatal consequences.**
- **When closing the tailgate, please ensure that no one has their hands in the direct path of the tailgate as it moves.**

Before closing the tailgate, check that the vehicle key is not in the luggage compartment.

Windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Opening or closing the windows electrically*
⇒ *Opening and closing the rear hinged windows*

Additional information and warnings:

- Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Central locking system ⇒ *Central locking system*

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- **The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.**
- **Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.**

NOTICE

During sudden rain showers, water can enter the vehicle interior via open windows and cause damage to the vehicle.

Opening or closing the windows electrically

Fig. 30 In the front doors: buttons for the electric window

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Opening and closing the front windows

Function	Action
Opening:	Press the button.
Closing:	Pull the button.

Opening and closing the rear hinged windows

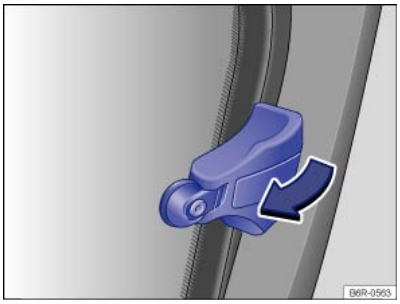


Fig. 31 In the rear doors: opening the hinged windows

Fig. 32 In the rear doors: closing the hinged windows

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

In 4-door vehicles, the rear windows can be opened and closed mechanically.

Opening hinged windows

- Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 31*.
- Push the release lever outwards until it clicks into place with the window fully open.

Closing the hinged window

- Pull the release lever ⇒ *Fig. 32①* inwards.
- Push the release lever back ② until it clicks into place and the window is closed.

⚠ WARNING

Always take care when using the mechanical hinged windows as you could cause serious injuries.

- **The mechanical hinged windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating areas.**

NOTICE

During sudden rain showers, water can enter the vehicle interior via open hinged windows and cause damage to the vehicle.

Electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Opening and closing the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof*
⇒ *Roll-back function of the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof*

Additional information and warnings:

- Central locking system ⇒ *Central locking system*
- Roof carrier ⇒ *Roof carrier*

⚠ WARNING

Always take care when using the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof; otherwise you could cause accidents or serious injuries.

- **The electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its operating area.**
- **Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the car, particularly if they have access to the vehicle key. Unsupervised use of the vehicle key can result in the vehicle being locked, the engine being started, the ignition being switched on and the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof being operated.**
- **The electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof can be operated for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door or the front passenger door is not opened.**

NOTICE

- **In cold conditions, remove any ice and snow from the roof of the vehicle before you open or tilt the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof to avoid the risk of damage.**
- **The electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof should always be closed before you leave the vehicle or if it starts to rain. Any rain entering the vehicle when the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof is open could cause considerable damage to the electrical system. This can result in further damage to the vehicle.**

Leaves and other loose objects must be removed from the guide rails of the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof at regular intervals, using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.

If there is a fault in the electric panorama sliding/tilting roof, the roll-back function will not work properly. Go to a qualified workshop

Opening and closing the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof

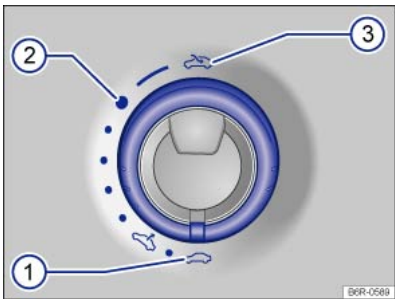


Fig. 33 In the roof: turn the switch to open and close

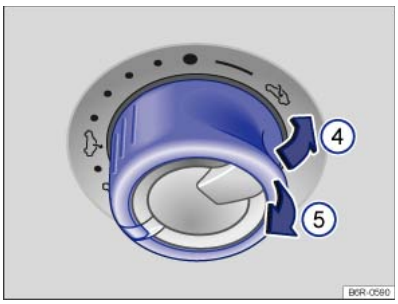


Fig. 34 In the headliner: push the switch to tilt and pull the switch to close

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The rotary switch must be in the basic position ① before the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof can be tilted.

Function	⇒ *Fig. 33* and ⇒ *Fig. 34*	Action
Opening sliding roof completely.	③	Turn the switch past the position ② and hold down until the glass roof has reached the required position.
Moving sliding roof to convenience position.	②	Turn the switch to the required position.
Setting an intermediate position.	② to ①	
Closing sliding roof completely.	①	
Tilting the tilting roof completely.	④	Push the switch back briefly.
Stopping the one-touch function.	④ or ⑤	Press or pull the switch again briefly.
Closing fully.	⑤	Pull the switch back briefly.

The electric panorama sliding/tilting roof will work only when the ignition has been switched on. The electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof can be operated for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door or the front passenger door is not opened.

If the closing procedure has been started, it will be interrupted as soon as the ignition is switched off and the switch for the electric panorama sliding and tilting glass roof is activated.

If it is not possible to close the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof electrically you will have to close it manually. You will not be able to close the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof manually without first removing some vehicle components. Proceed to a qualified workshop.

Sliding blind

Use the handle at the front near the roof opening to move the sliding blind to the required position.

The convenience position allows sufficient air supply together with low wind noise.

Roll-back function of the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of injury when the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof is being closed ⇒⚠. If the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof is not able to close because it is stiff or obstructed, it will automatically open again immediately.

- Check why the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof has not closed.
- Try to close the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof again.
- If the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof is still stiff or obstructed, it stops at this point. Then close the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof without the roll-back function

Closing the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof without the roll-back function

- Pull the switch ⇒ *Fig. 34@* within approximately 5 seconds after the roll-back function has been triggered and hold it in this position until the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof is closed completely.
- **The electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof will then close without the roll-back function.**
- If the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof still cannot be closed, go to a qualified workshop.

If you let go of the switch during the closing procedure, the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof will open automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof without the roll-back function can cause severe injuries.

- **Always be careful when closing the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof.**
- **Ensure that nobody is obstructing the operating area of the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof, especially if the roll-back function is not active.**
- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the roof frame and sustaining injury.**

Sitting correctly and safely

Adjusting the seat position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position*
⇒ *Correct sitting position*
⇒ *Controls on the front seats*
⇒ *Adjusting the rear head restraint*
⇒ *Removing and installing the rear head restraint*
⇒ *Adjusting the steering wheel position*

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **4** seats: 2 at the front and 2 at the rear. Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

Additional information and warnings:

- Seat functions ⇒ *Seat functions*
- Seat belts ⇒ *Seat belts*
- Airbag system ⇒ *Airbag system*
- Child seats (accessories) ⇒ *Child seats (accessories)*

WARNING

Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, in the event of a collision or accident, or if the airbags are triggered.

- **All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to the fastening of seat belts.**
- **The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.**
- **Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system suitable for their height and weight ⇒ *Child seats (accessories)⇒ Airbag system*.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion. Never place your feet on the seat or on the dash panel and never hold your feet out the window. The airbag and seat belt can otherwise not provide optimal protection and can actually increase the risk of injury during an accident.**

WARNING

Always adjust seats, seat belts and head restraints to their correct position before any journey and ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belt.

- **Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.**
- **Adjust the driver seat in such a way that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled and the distance to the dash panel in the knee area is at least 10 cm. If your physical build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement, you must contact a qualified workshop so they can make any necessary modifications.**
- **Never travel with the backrest tilted far back. The further back the backrest is tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect seat belt routing or an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Never travel with the backrest tilted far forwards. When an airbag is triggered it could force the seat backrest backwards and injure vehicle occupants on the back seats.**
- **Adopt and maintain the greatest possible distance to the steering wheel and dash panel.**
- **You should always sit upright with your back against the seat backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Do not position any body part too close where the airbags are fitted.**
- **The risk of serious injury is increased for passengers on the rear seat if they are not sitting upright because the seat belts are incorrectly positioned.**

WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **The seats may only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary as the seat could otherwise change position unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion, leading to a loss of control of the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.**
- **Only adjust the height and tilt of the seat or move it forwards and backwards when the area around the seat is clear.**
- **There should be no objects in the adjustment area of the front seats.**

The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

If the seat belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can only provide optimal protection if the seat belt routing is correct. Assuming an incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by a seat belt. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a triggering airbag strikes an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all vehicle passengers, especially if they are children.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all occupants.

Whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.

- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Every incorrect sitting position in the vehicle increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- **All vehicle occupants must maintain a correct sitting position and wear their seat belt properly while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position, not fastening the seat belt or too short a distance to the airbag exposes the occupants to critical or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags trigger and strike an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**

Correct sitting position

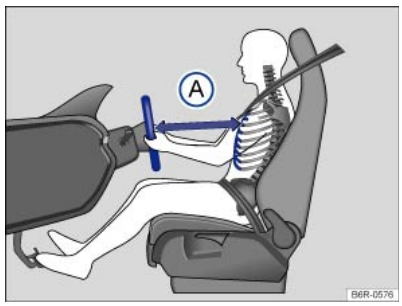


Fig. 35 There must be a distance Ⓐ of at least 25 cm between the driver and the steering wheel

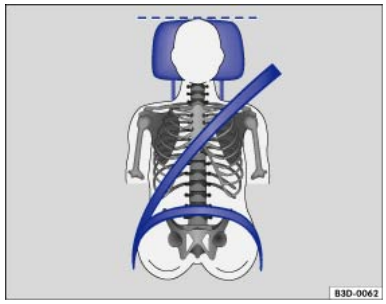


Fig. 36 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The following details the correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers.

If any vehicle occupants cannot assume a correct sitting position due to their physical build, they should contact a qualified workshop to find out about possible special modifications. The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if a correct sitting position is assumed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends the following seating position for your own safety and to reduce the level of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

Notes for the driver:

- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Adjust the seat so that the distance between the steering wheel and your breastbone is at least 25 cm ⇒ *Fig. 35Ⓐ* and the circumference of the steering wheel can be held at the sides with the arms slightly bent.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.
- Adjust the driver seat so that you are able to press the pedals with your knees still slightly bent ⇒ *Fig. 35*.
- Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Always leave both feet in the footwell, to help ensure you maintain control of the vehicle at all times.

- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly ⇒ *Seat belts*.

Notes for the front passenger:

- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is triggered.
- Keep both feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly ⇒ *Seat belts*.

Notes for the rear passengers:

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible ⇒ *Fig. 35* and ⇒ *Fig. 36*.
- When adjusting for shorter people, push the head restraint to the first position, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint.
- For taller people, push the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- Keep both feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly ⇒ *Seat belts*.

Controls on the front seats

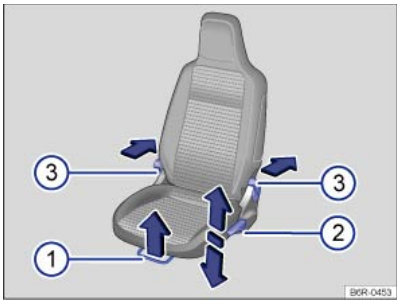


Fig. 37 Front left-hand seat controls

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The layout of the controls on the front right-hand seat is a mirror image of the layout of the controls on the front left-hand seat.

The head restraints on the front seats are integrated in the backrest and cannot be adjusted.

⇒ *Fig. 37*	Function	Action
①	Pushing the front seat forwards or backwards.	Lift the lever and move the front seat. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.
②	Adjusting the seat height.	Move the lever up or down, several times if necessary.
③	Adjusting the backrest or folding the backrest forwards and backwards[a)]	*Adjusting*: operate and hold the lever. Adjust the angle of the backrest to the required position. Release the lever to secure the position of the backrest ⇒⚠.
		Folding forwards in 2-door vehicles: operate the lever and fold the seat backrest forwards. At the same time, slide the seat forwards. *Folding forwards in 4-door vehicles:* operate the lever and fold the seat backrest forwards.
		Folding backwards in 2-door vehicles: slide the seat back as far as it will go until it engages. Operate the lever and fold the seat backrest back. The seat backrest must engage in an upright position when the lever is released ⇒⚠. *Folding backwards in 4-door vehicles:* operate the lever and fold the seat backrest backwards. The seat backrest must engage in an upright position when the lever is released ⇒⚠.

WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- **Never fold the seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **While folding the seat backrest forwards, always ensure that there are no people, animals or objects in its path.**
- **When folding forwards and backwards, keep all hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat hinges and seat release mechanism.**
- **Floor mats or other objects could get caught in the hinges on the seat backrest. The seat backrest might then not engage securely when it is returned to the upright position.**
- **Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards or is not clicked securely into place.**
- **When being folded back, the seat backrest must be securely locked in the upright position. If the seat backrest is not locked properly it could move suddenly and cause severe injuries.**

[a] In 4-door vehicles: on the interior side of the seat only.

Adjusting the rear head restraint

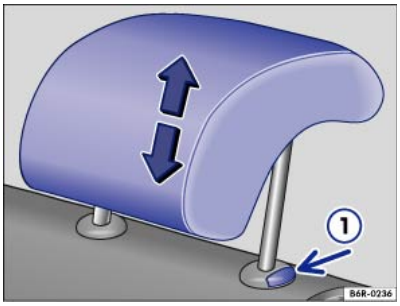


Fig. 38 Adjusting rear head restraint

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint.

The head restraints on the front seats are integrated in the backrest and cannot be adjusted.

The rear seats are fitted with an adjustable head restraint.

Adjusting the height

- Push the head restraint up in the direction of the arrow or push it down while pressing and holding button ⇒ *Fig. 38①*⇒⚠.
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

Correct head restraint setting

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.

Head restraint setting for shorter people

Push the head restraint to the first position, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint. There may be a small gap between the head restraint and backrest in the lowest position.

Head restraint setting for taller people

Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- **If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted correctly.**
- **Each vehicle occupant must adjust the head restraint to suit their body size, to help reduce the risk of neck injuries in an accident. As far as possible, the upper edge of the head restraint must be level with the top of the head, but no lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.**
- **Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.**

Removing and installing the rear head restraint

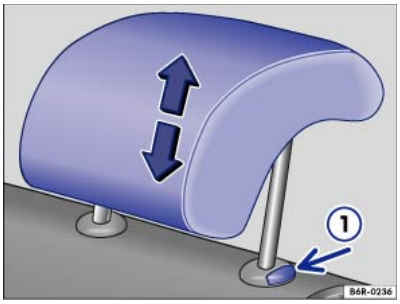


Fig. 39 Removing the rear head restraint

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The rear seats are fitted with an adjustable head restraint.

Removing the rear head restraints

- Release the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- Push the head restraint all the way up ⇒⚠.
- Pull the head restraint out fully while pressing the button ⇒ *Fig. 39①*.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow it to engage securely. Please ensure that the seat belts are not trapped.
- Stow the head restraint in a safe place once removed.

Fitting the rear head restraints

- Release the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Press and hold the button ⇒ *Fig. 39①* and push the head restraint downwards.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow it to engage securely.
- Adjust the head restraint so that a correct sitting position can be assumed ⇒ *Adjusting the rear head restraint*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- **If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted correctly.**
- **Head restraints that have been removed should be reinstalled as soon as possible to ensure that passengers are properly protected.**

NOTICE

When removing or fitting head restraints, ensure that they do not hit the roof or the front seat backrest. The interior roof and other parts of the vehicle could otherwise be damaged.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

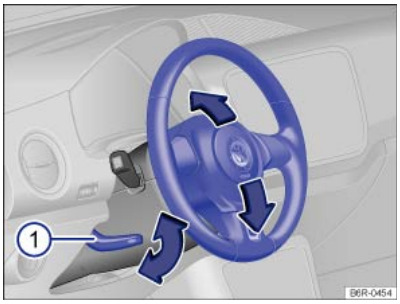


Fig. 40 Adjusting the steering wheel position mechanically

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Adjust the steering wheel position only before setting off and only when the vehicle is stationary.

- Push down the lever ⇒ *Fig. 40①*.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold it on the outside of the ring (at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions) with both hands and slightly bent arms.
- Push the lever up firmly until it lines up with the steering column ⇒⚠.

Adjust the correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 35* using the control elements on the driver seat ⇒ *Controls on the front seats*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering column position adjustment and incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- **After adjusting the steering column, always move lever ⇒ *Fig. 40*① up so that it engages securely. This prevents the steering column from moving spontaneously while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If you determine that a readjustment is necessary, stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.**
- **The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.**
- **While driving, always keep both hands on the outside of the steering wheel, at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver front airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner, e.g. on the hub of the steering wheel. If the driver airbag is triggered, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.**

Seat functions

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Seat heating*

Additional information and warnings:

- Adjusting the seat position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*
- Seat belts ⇒ *Seat belts*
- Airbag system ⇒ *Airbag system*
- Child seats (accessories) ⇒ *Child seats (accessories)*
- Exterior mirrors ⇒ *Mirrors*

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions can cause serious injuries.

- **Always assume a correct sitting position before you drive and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to all passengers.**
- **Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the moving parts of the seats.**

Seat heating

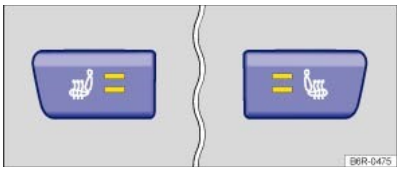


Fig. 41 In upper part of centre console: buttons for the front seat heating

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The front seat seat cushions and backrests can be heated electrically when the ignition is switched on.

Do not switch on the seat heating if one of the following conditions applies:

- The seat is not in use.
- The seat is fitted with a protective cover.
- A child seat is installed on the seat.
- The seat cushion is damp or wet.
- The interior or exterior temperature is above 25 °C (77 °F).

Switch off the seat heating when the seat is not occupied.

Function	Action ⇒ *Fig. 41*
Switching on	Press the button. The seat heating is switched on at the highest setting. All indicator lamps light up in the button.
Adjusting the heating output	Press the button again until the required heating level is set.
Switching off	Press the button until the indicator lamps in the button go out.

If the second temperature level has been switched on for more than 15 minutes, it will automatically switch to the first temperature level. Only one indicator lamp will be lit up.

WARNING

Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) could sustain burns on the back, buttocks and legs when using the seat heating. These burns may take a long time to heal or may never heal fully. Please consult a doctor to determine your own level of health.

- **Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature should never use the seat heating.**

WARNING

Wet upholstery can cause a fault in the seat heating and increase the risk of burns.

- **Ensure that the seat cushion is dry before the seat heating is used.**
- **Do not sit on the seat when wearing damp or wet clothing.**
- **Do not set any damp or wet objects or items of clothing on the seat.**
- **Do not spill any liquids on the seat.**

NOTICE

- **To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.**
- **Liquids, sharp objects and insulating materials (such as a protective cover or child seat) on the seat could damage the seat heating.**
- **If the system starts to emit a smell, switch the seat heating off immediately and have it checked by a qualified workshop.**

The seat heating should be switched off as soon as it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.

Seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Warning lamp*
⇒ *Frontal collisions and the laws of physics*
⇒ *What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts*
⇒ *Seat belt protection*
⇒ *Using seat belts*
⇒ *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*
⇒ *Seat belt routing*
⇒ *Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter*
⇒ *Service and disposal of belt tensioners*

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. If the belt webbing, belt connections, belt retractor or seat belt buckle become damaged, the seat belt in question should be replaced immediately by a qualified workshop ⇒⚠. The qualified workshop must use correct spare parts that are compatible with the vehicle, equipment level and model year. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Additional information and warnings:

- Adjusting the seat position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*
- Airbag system ⇒ *Airbag system*
- Child seats (accessories) ⇒ *Child seats (accessories)*
- Stowage ⇒ *Stowage area*
- Cleaning and caring for the interior ⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly.

- Seat belts are the most effective means of reducing the risk of serious and fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Seat belts must always be fastened properly when the vehicle is in motion to protect the driver and all vehicle occupants.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants and also in urban traffic.
- While the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and height. They must also wear correctly fastened seat belts ⇒ *Child seats (accessories)*.
- Only start driving when all passengers have correctly fastened their seat belts.
- Only ever insert the latch plate into the buckle of the associated seat, and always ensure that it engages properly. Using a buckle that does not belong to the seat that you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.
- Never let any foreign bodies or liquids enter the slot for the seat belt buckle. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.
- Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.
- Never travel when children or babies are being carried on somebody's lap and fastened with the same belt.
- Never travel wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.

WARNING

Damaged seat belts are very dangerous and can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belt may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.
- Damaged seat belts must be replaced immediately with new seat belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Seat belts subjected to stress and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself. All repairs to the seat belts, belt retractors and buckles must be carried out by a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp

Fig. 42 Warning lamp in the instrument cluster

Fig. 43 Seat belt status for the rear seats in the instrument cluster display

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	The driver seat belt and, if the front passenger seat is occupied, the front passenger seat belt are not fastened.	Fasten seat belts.
	There are objects on the front passenger seat.	Remove objects from the front passenger seat and stow them safely.

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Seat belt not fastened for a rear seat passenger.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Seat belt fastened for a rear seat passenger.	

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

An acoustic signal will sound for a few seconds if the seat belts are not fastened as the car pulls off and reaches a speed of more than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph), or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. The warning lamp will also flash.

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp will not go out until the driver and front passenger fasten their seat belts.

Belt status display for the rear seats

After the ignition has been switched on, the belt status display ⇒ *Fig. 43* in the instrument cluster display shows the driver whether the rear seat passengers have fastened their seat belts. The symbol indicates that the passenger on this seat has fastened his or her seat belt.

The belt status display will be shown for approximately 30 seconds if a seat belt is fastened or unfastened on the rear seats. The display can be hidden by pressing the 0.0 / SET button in the instrument cluster.

If a seat belt for one of the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion, the belt status display will flash for a maximum of 30 seconds. If the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) an acoustic signal will also sound.

WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts only offer the optimum level of protection when they are used properly.

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

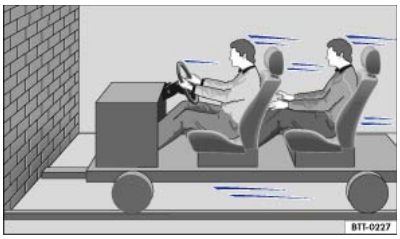


Fig. 44 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a brick wall

Fig. 45 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle striking a brick wall

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple. As soon as the vehicle is in motion ⇒ *Fig. 44*, both the moving vehicle and its passengers gain kinetic energy.

The higher the vehicle speed and the heavier the weight of the vehicle, the greater the amount of energy that will have to be released in the event of an accident.

However, the most significant factor is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) to approximately 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four.

The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the heavier the weight, the greater the amount of energy that will be released in the event of an accident.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not connected to the vehicle. In the event of a frontal collision they will continue to move forwards at the same speed at which the vehicle was travelling before impact, until something stops them. Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy will only be released at the point of impact against the wall ⇒ *Fig. 45*.

Even at speeds of approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) to approximately 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). These forces are even greater at higher speeds.

This example applies not only to frontal collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts

Fig. 46 An unbelted driver is thrown forwards

Fig. 47 The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forwards, hitting the belted driver

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Many people believe that they can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision. This is not true.

Even at low speeds, the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that occupants cannot brace themselves with their arms and hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted vehicle occupants are thrown forwards and will make unchecked contact with parts of the vehicle interior, e.g. the steering wheel, dash panel, or windscreen ⇒ *Fig. 46*.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When triggered, the airbags only provide additional protection. Airbags are not triggered in all kinds of accidents. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their seat belt and wear it correctly while the vehicle is in motion. This reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat.

An airbag can only be triggered once. To achieve best possible protection, seat belts must always be worn properly. This also ensures that protection is provided in accidents in which the airbag is not triggered. Any vehicle occupants not wearing a seat belt can be thrown out of the vehicle and sustain more severe or even fatal injuries as a result.

It is also important for the rear seat occupants to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forwards violently in an accident. Rear passengers who are not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves and the driver, but also other people in the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 47*.

Seat belt protection

Fig. 48 Driver restrained by a properly positioned seat belt during a sudden braking manoeuvre

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Correctly fastened seat belts can make a major difference. When fastened properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and considerably reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, wearing seat belts properly reduces the risk of being thrown from the vehicle *⇒ Fig. 48*.

Passengers wearing seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to reduce kinetic energy. The amount of energy generated will thus decrease, thereby reducing the risk of injury.

The examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts substantially reduce the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why seat belts must be fastened before every trip – even if you are only planning to drive a very short distance. Ensure that all passengers also wear their seat belts properly.

Accident statistics have shown properly worn seat belts to be an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. This is why wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Although the vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. For example, the front airbags will only be triggered in certain types of frontal collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off.

Using seat belts

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Checklist

Using seat belts ⇒⚠:

- ✓ Check the condition of all seat belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep the seat belts clean.
- ✓ Never let any foreign bodies or fluids get on to the seat belt, the latch plate or into the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- ✓ Do not trap or damage the seat belt and latch plate, for example when closing the door.
- ✓ Never remove, modify or repair the seat belt or any part of the belt fixture system.
- ✓ Always fasten the seat belt correctly before every journey and keep it fastened while the vehicle is in motion.

Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim:

- Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.
- Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.

Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist. However, the twist should not be in part of the seat belt that comes into direct contact with the body. The twist should be corrected immediately by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- **Regularly check to see if the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect condition.**
- **Always keep the seat belt clean.**
- **Do not allow the belt webbing to become jammed, damaged or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Always keep the latch plate and slot in the buckle free from foreign bodies and liquids.**

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

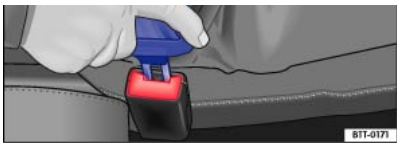


Fig. 49 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle

Fig. 50 Removing the latch plate from the buckle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

During an accident or braking manoeuvre, correctly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way as to provide maximum protection ⇒⚠.

Fastening the seat belts

Fasten seat belts before every trip.

- Always adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.
- Engage the rear seat backrests in an upright position ⇒⚠.
- Take hold of the latch plate and pull it evenly across your chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the belt in the process ⇒⚠.
- Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle belonging to the occupied seat ⇒ *Fig. 49*.
- Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

Unfastening the seat belts

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary ⇒⚠.

- Press the red button in the buckle ⇒ *Fig. 50*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- **The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly according to the occupant's height.**
- **Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.**

Seat belt routing

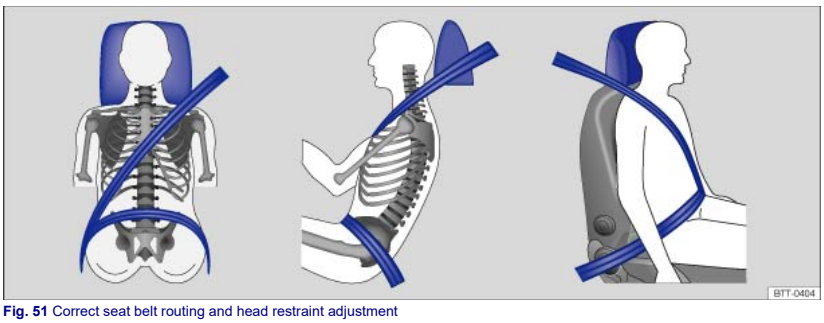


Fig. 51 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment

Fig. 52 Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Seat belts only provide an optimum level of protection during an accident when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt routing reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Correct seat belt routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore you must always fasten your seat belt and ensure that the seat belt routing is correct.

Assuming an incorrect sitting position can cause severe or fatal injuries ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.

Correct seat belt routing

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the belt if necessary.

For **pregnant women** the seat belt must be positioned evenly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis. It must lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the lower body – this applies in every stage of pregnancy ⇒ *Fig. 52*.

Correct seat belt routing according to height

The following equipment can be used to adjust the seat belt routing:

- Height-adjustable front seats ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre.

- **The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if the seat belt shifts from harder body parts in the direction of softer body parts (e.g. the stomach).**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.**
- **The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the chest.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis. Tighten the belt if necessary.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must be as low as possible over the pelvis and lie flat around the bulge of the belly.**
- **Do not twist the belt webbing while the seat belt is being worn.**
- **Never hold the seat belt away from the body by hand.**
- **The belt webbing should not lie over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar items to alter the seat belt routing.**

If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a qualified workshop to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The seat belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle safety concept ⇒ *Airbag system* and include the following important functions:

Automatic belt retractor

Every seat belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder part of the belt. Full freedom of movement is made possible when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, if the belt is pulled out quickly or during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic belt retractor is locked.

Belt tensioners

The seat belts for the front seat occupants are equipped with belt tensioners.

The belt tensioners are activated by sensors during severe frontal, side and rear collisions. They tighten the seat belts against the direction in which they are pulled. A loose seat belt is retracted, which can reduce the forward movement or the movement of the vehicle occupants in the direction of the impact. The belt tensioner works together with the airbag system. If the side airbags are not activated, the belt tensioner will not be activated if the vehicle rolls over.

A fine dust may be produced when the airbags are triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

Belt tension limiter

The belt tension limiter reduces the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the body during an accident.

All safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements ⇒ *Service and disposal of belt tensioners*.

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Seat belts may become damaged during any work on the belt tensioners or while removing or refitting any vehicle parts in conjunction with any other repair work. This damage will not always be noticeable. The consequence may be that the belt tensioners could function incorrectly, or not function at all, in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly, or if they are repaired by a non-professional. As a result, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly.

- **Any repairs, adjustments or removal and refitting of parts in the belt tensioners or seat belts should always be carried out by a qualified workshop and never by yourself ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.**
- **Belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.**

The airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal.

Airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Types of front passenger front airbag system*
⇒ *Indicator lamps*
⇒ *Description and function of the airbags*
⇒ *Front airbags*
⇒ *Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch*
⇒ *Side airbags*

The vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and front passenger. The front airbags can provide front seat occupants with additional chest and head protection if the seat, seat belts, head restraints and, in the case of the driver, steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags are meant only for additional protection. The airbags are not a substitute for seat belts. Seat belts must always be worn, even when the front seats are equipped with front airbags.

Additional information and warnings:

- Driving tips ⇒ *Driving tips*
- Central locking system ⇒ *Central locking system*
- Correct sitting position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*
- Seat belts ⇒ *Seat belts*
- Child seats (accessories) ⇒ *Child seats (accessories)*
- Cleaning and caring for the interior ⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*

WARNING

Never rely solely on the airbag system for your protection.

- Even if an airbag is triggered, it only offers auxiliary protection.
- The airbag system offers the best level of protection, and reduces the risk of injury, when seat belts are properly worn ⇒ *Seat belts*.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants.

WARNING

The risk of injury increases if there are any objects located between the vehicle occupants and the deployment area of the airbag when it is triggered. This will alter the deployment zone of the airbag, or the objects will be flung against the body.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the front passenger seat. The objects could enter the deployment zone of the airbag during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbag is activated.
- Occupants of the front seats and rear seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment space between them and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.

WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once. The system will have to be replaced if the airbags have been triggered.

- Airbags that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must immediately be replaced with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter any components of the airbag system.

WARNING

A fine dust may develop when the airbags trigger. This is normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

- The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes and cause breathing difficulties, particularly for people suffering from asthma or people who have (had) other respiratory problems. To help reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors for more fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, you should wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- Do not let the dust get into your eyes or into open wounds.
- If dust has entered your eyes, rinse them with water.

WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents cause the surface of the airbag modules to become porous. In an accident that triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.

- Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.

Types of front passenger front airbag system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Volkswagen offers 2 different front airbag systems for front passengers:

A	B
Features of the front passenger front airbag that can only be switched off by a qualified workshop.	**Features of the front passenger front airbag that can be switched off manually using the key-operated switch** ⇒ ***Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch*****.**
– Indicator lamp in the instrument cluster. – Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.	– Indicator lamp in the instrument cluster. – Indicator lamp in the dash panel PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF – Key-operated switch in the dash panel on the front passenger side. – Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.
Name: airbag system.	**Name: airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation.**

Indicator lamps

Fig. 53 In the upper part of the centre console: indicator lamp for disabled front passenger front airbag

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Lit up	Location	Possible cause	Solution
	Instrument cluster	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system.	Proceed to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
OFF	Dash panel	Fault in the airbag system.	Proceed to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
		Front passenger front airbag switched off.	Check whether the airbag should stay switched off.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is **not continuously** lit or if it lights up together with the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster when the front passenger front airbag is switched off, there may be a fault in the airbag system ⇒.

WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- **The airbag system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.**
- **Never fit a child seat to the front passenger seat or remove a child seat that is already fitted. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident in spite of the fault.**

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.

Description and function of the airbags

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants during frontal and side collisions by reducing their movement in the direction of the collision.

When an airbag is triggered, it is inflated by a gas generator. This causes the airbag covers to break, and the airbags inflate forcefully to cover their deployment zones within milliseconds. Once a vehicle occupant wearing a seat belt starts to sink into the inflated airbag, the gas inside the airbag starts to escape to cushion the occupant and slow down their movement. This can reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries such as swelling, bruising and grazing. Deployment of a triggered airbag can also result in frictional heat.

Airbags provide no protection for the arms or lower body.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact, the vehicle speed and the type of object with which the vehicle collides. Therefore, visible damage to the vehicle does not always mean that the airbag should have been triggered.

The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage in an accident do not necessarily give an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds and reference values, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. It is therefore impossible to cover every possible kind and angle of impact that would trigger the airbags. Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, and the vehicle speed.

Airbags only serve as a supplement to the three-point seat belt in some accident situations when the vehicle braking is sufficient to trigger the airbags. Airbags can only be triggered once and only in certain situations. The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations in which the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered. For example, if the vehicle collides with a further vehicle following the initial collision, or is hit by another vehicle.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.

Components of the vehicle safety concept

The following vehicle safety equipment makes up the vehicle's safety concept to reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. Some of this equipment may not be fitted in your particular vehicle. It may not be available at all in some countries.

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Belt tensioners for driver and front passenger.
- Belt tension limiters for driver and front passenger.
- Warning lamp .
- Front airbags for driver and front passenger.
- Side airbags for driver and front passenger.
- Airbag indicator lamp .
- Control units and sensors.
- Head restraints optimised for rear impact.
- Adjustable steering column.
- If fitted, ISOFIX anchor points for child seats on the rear outer seats.
- If applicable, securing points for the top tether for child seats.

Situations in which the front and side airbags will not be triggered:

- If the ignition is switched off during a collision.
- If the level of deceleration measured by the control unit is too low during a collision at the front of the vehicle.
- During a minor side collision.
- During rear collisions.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- If the speed in a collision is lower than the reference value specified in the control unit.

Front airbags

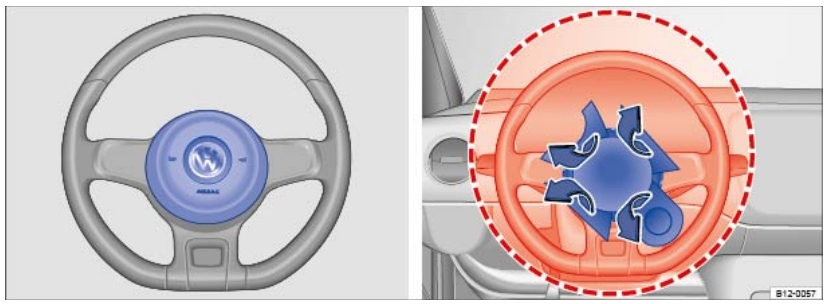


Fig. 54 Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag

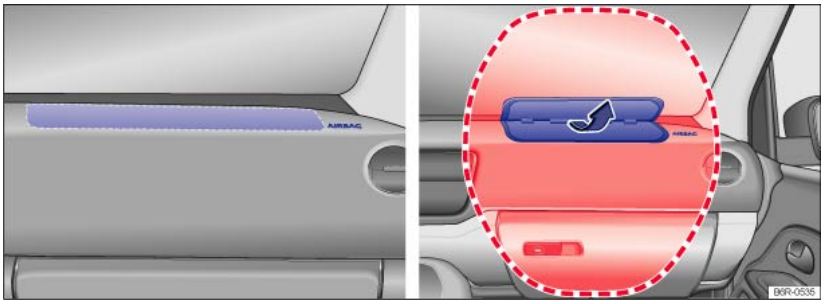


Fig. 55 Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision. Always keep as far away from the front airbag as possible ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*. This allows the front airbags to inflate fully when triggered, thus providing maximum protection.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 54* and the front airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 55*. The airbag locations are identified by the text AIRBAG.

The areas inside the red lines ⇒ *Fig. 54* and ⇒ *Fig. 55* are covered by the front airbags when triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any objects in these areas ⇒⚠. Any factory-fitted accessories will not be struck if the driver and front passenger front airbags are deployed.

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 54* or dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 55* when the driver and front passenger front airbags trigger. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel.

⚠ DANGER

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- **Always leave the deployment zones of the front airbags clear.**
- **Never attach any objects, such as drink or telephone holders, to the covers of the airbags or anywhere in the airbag deployment zone.**
- **Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags.**
- **Do not attach any objects, e.g. mobile navigation devices, to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.**
- **Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit in the dash panel on the front passenger side, and do not modify them in any way.**

⚠ WARNING

The front airbags are deployed in front of the steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 54* and dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 55*.

- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.**
- **Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Contact a qualified workshop if your physical build makes this impracticable.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dash panel is as large as possible.**

Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch

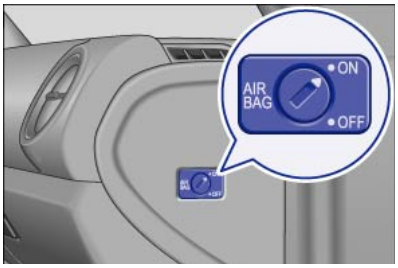


Fig. 56 On the front passenger side: key switch for disabling and enabling the front airbag on the front passenger side

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off when securing a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat.

Disabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Fold out the key bit of the vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Use the open key bit to turn the key switch ⇒ *Fig. 56* to the **OFF** position.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- When the ignition is switched on, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp will light up permanently in the dash panel ⇒ *Indicator lamps*.

Enabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Fold out the key bit of the vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Use the open key bit to turn the key switch ⇒ *Fig. 56* to the **ON** position.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- Check that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the dash panel does *not* light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ *Indicator lamps*.

Identifying characteristics for a disabled front passenger front airbag

A disabled front passenger front airbag is identified **only** when the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is displayed in the dash panel (OFF lights up yellow continuously) ⇒ *Indicator lamps*.

If the indicator lamp OFF in the dash panel is **not lit up steadily**, or if it lights up at the same time as indicator lamp in the instrument cluster, do not attach any child restraint system to the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The front passenger front airbag should only be switched off in exceptional circumstances.

- **To prevent damage to the airbag system, only switch the front passenger front airbag on and off when the ignition is switched off.**
- **It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.**
- **Only switch the front passenger front airbag off if, in exceptional circumstances, a child seat has to be attached to the front passenger seat.**
- **Switch the front passenger front airbag back on again as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used.**

Side airbags

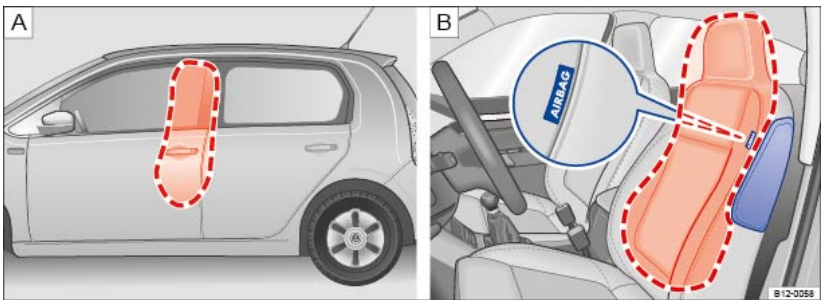


Fig. 57 On left-hand side of vehicle: deployment zone of the side airbag (variant A). On the side of the front seat: location and deployment range of the side airbag (variant B)

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The side airbags are located in the outer seat backrest cushions of the driver seat and front passenger seat ⇒ *Fig. 57* **B**. The locations of the airbags are marked with stickers with the word AIRBAG. The areas marked in red ⇒ *Fig. 57* indicate the side airbag deployment zones.

During a side collision, the side airbag will be deployed on the vehicle's side of impact, reducing the risk of injury to the areas of the occupants' heads and bodies facing the impact.

WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- **Always leave the deployment zones of the side airbags clear.**
- **No other persons, animals or objects may be located between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment zone.**
- **Do not fit any accessories to the doors.**
- **Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle. Otherwise the side airbag may not be able to inflate if it has been triggered.**

WARNING

Incorrect use of the driver and front passenger seat could hinder the proper function of the side airbag and cause serious injury.

- **Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.**
- **If too much pressure is applied to the backrest side bolster, the side airbags may not be triggered correctly, may not trigger at all, or may trigger unexpectedly.**
- **Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.**

Child seats (accessories)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *General information on transporting children in the vehicle*
⇒ *Various securing systems*
⇒ *Using a child seat on the front passenger seat*
⇒ *Using a child seat on the rear seats*
⇒ *Securing child seats with a seat belt*
⇒ *Securing child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)*
⇒ *Securing child seats with the top tether*

It is imperative that you read all of the information concerning the airbag system before transporting babies or children in a child seat on the front passenger seat.

This information is very important for the safety of the driver and the safety of all passengers, babies and small children in particular.

Volkswagen recommends using child seats from Volkswagen's range of accessories. These child seats were developed and approved for use in Volkswagen vehicles. Child seats for the various different securing systems are available from a Volkswagen dealership.

Additional information and warnings:

- Seat belts ⇒ *Seat belts*
- Airbag system ⇒ *Airbag system*

WARNING

Children who are not strapped in or who are not strapped in properly could sustain severe or fatal injuries while the vehicle is in motion.

- **Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is switched on.**
- **Children up to 12 years of age should always be transported on the rear seat.**
- **Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system suitable for their height and weight.**
- **Always fasten children's seat belts correctly and ensure that they assume a correct sitting position.**
- **Adjust the seat backrest to an upright position if a child seat is to be used on this seat.**
- **Do not allow children to sit with their heads or any other body parts in the deployment zone of the side airbag.**
- **Ensure that the seat belt routing is correct.**
- **Never allow children or babies to be transported on someone's lap, or while being held.**
- **Only ever fasten one child into each child seat.**
- **Read and follow the instructions by the manufacturer of the child seat.**

WARNING

An unsecured, unoccupied child seat can be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident and cause injuries.

- **Always secure child seats safely or stow them in the luggage compartment if they are not being used while the vehicle is in motion.**

Replace child seats that withstand any force during an accident as they could have sustained damage that may not be visible.

General information on transporting children in the vehicle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Legislation and legal requirements take precedence over the descriptions in this owner's manual. Various standards and regulations govern the use of child seats and methods for securing them (). For example, this could mean that in some countries you are not allowed to use child seats on certain seats in the vehicle.

The laws of physics, which come into force on a vehicle during a collision or any other kind of accident, also apply to children ⇒ *Seat belts*. In contrast to adults and teenagers, however, children's muscles and bones are not yet fully developed. There is a higher risk for children than for adults of sustaining serious injuries in an accident.

Children must be transported using child restraint systems that are specifically suited to their size, weight and physical build, as children's bodies are not yet fully developed. In many countries there are laws that require the use of approved child restraint systems for babies and small children.

Only use suitable, approved and authorised child seats in your vehicle. If you are unsure, always speak to your Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop.

Checklist

Transporting children in the vehicle ⇒:

✓ Comply with any country-specific legal regulations.

✓ Volkswagen recommends that children under 12 years of age are always transported on the rear seats.

✓ A child should only be transported on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances Using a child seat on the front passenger seat. The safest seat in the vehicle is on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat.

✓ Always secure any children in the vehicle in a restraint system. The restraint system must be suitable for the child's height, weight and build.

✓ Transport only one child per child seat.

✓ Observe the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat and always keep them in the vehicle.

✓ When securing a child seat using the seat belt, always guide the belt through or around the child seat as described in the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.

✓ Always ensure that the seat belt routing is correct for children and that they are sitting in the correct position.

✓ Whenever possible, fit the child seat on the rear bench seat behind the front passenger seat so that children can exit the vehicle on the kerb side.

✓

✓ Do not leave any toys or other objects loose in the child seat or on the seat while the vehicle is in motion.

Country-specific standards for child seats (selection)

The child seats must correspond to the standard ECE-R 44[1]. Further information is available from Volkswagen dealerships or on the Internet at www.volkswagen.com.

Group classification for child seats according to ECE-R 44

Weight class	Child's weight	Age
Group 0	up to 10 kg	up to approximately 9 months
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	up to approximately 18 months
Group 1	9 to 18 kg	approximately 8 months to 3 1/2 years
Group 2	15 to 25 kg	approximately 3 to 7 years
Group 3	22 to 36 kg	approximately 6 to 12 years

Not every child will fit in the seat specified for their weight group. Likewise, not every seat will fit in every vehicle. Therefore, always check whether the child fits correctly in the child seat and whether the seat is securely attached in the vehicle.

Child seats that have been tested and approved in accordance with the ECE R 44 standard bear the test mark on the seat: a large letter E in a circle with the test number below it.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and injuries.

- **Follow the instructions on the checklist.**

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident, the rear seat is the safest place for children with properly fastened seat belts.

- **A suitable child seat, correctly fitted and used on one of the rear seats, will, in most accident situations, provide the maximum level of protection for children up to 12 years old.**

[1] ECE R: **E**conomic **C**ommission for **E**urope Regulation.

Various securing systems

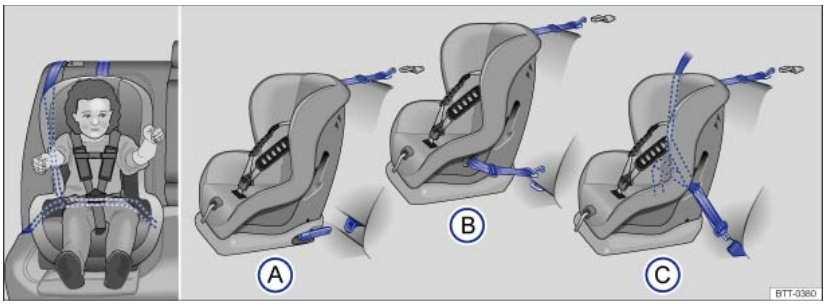


Fig. 58 On the rear seats: figures Ⓐ and Ⓑ illustrate the main securing points for the child restraint system on the lower retaining rings and top tether. Figure © shows how to secure the child restraint system using the vehicle seat belt

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Always secure child seats properly, safely and in accordance with the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.

The fitted child seat must sit close to the vehicle seat and must not be able to move or tip more than 2.5 cm.

Child seats that are intended to be secured using the top tether must be secured in the vehicle using the top tether ⇒ *Securing child seats with the top tether*. Attach the top tether only to the retaining rings fitted for this purpose. Always pull the top tether tightly so that the child seat is secure and fits closely to the seat.

Country-specific securing systems

Variants of the attachment system⇒ *Fig. 58*:

Ⓐ ISOFIX retaining rings and top tether, including in *Europe⇒ Securing child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)* and ⇒ *Securing child seats with the top tether*.

(B) LATCH/UCRA universal anchorage attachment points and top tether, including in *North America* ⇒ *Securing child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)*.

(C) Three-point automatic seat belt and top tether ⇒ *Securing child seats with a seat belt*.

The systems consist of attachments for child restraint systems with a top tether and lower anchoring points in the seat.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat. Not every child seat is suitable for use on the front passenger seat. Volkswagen dealerships keep an up-to-date list of all authorised child seats. Only use child seats that have been authorised for your vehicle.

The active front airbag on the front passenger side presents a major danger to a child. Transporting a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat can pose a danger to the child's life.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating front passenger front airbag can strike it with such force that critical or fatal injuries may occur ⇒. Therefore, **never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is activated.

Only use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when you have ascertained that the front passenger front airbag has been switched off. This is confirmed when the yellow indicator lamp in the dash panel PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF lights up ⇒ *Airbag system*. **If the front passenger front airbag cannot be switched off and stays active, do not transport any children on the front passenger seat** ⇒.

What to be aware of when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

- The front passenger front airbag **must** be deactivated when a rear-facing child seat is being used ⇒ *Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch*.
- The front passenger seat backrest must be in an upright position.
- The front passenger seat must be pushed as far back as it will go.
- In vehicles with height-adjustable seats, the front passenger seat must be as high as possible.

Suitable child seats

The child seat must be specially authorised by the manufacturer for use on the front passenger seat in vehicles with front and side airbags.

Universal child seats in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2, or 3, as specified in ECE-R 44, can be fitted to the front passenger seat.

DANGER

If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases. Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag is enabled. The child could suffer fatal injuries when the front airbag is activated as the child seat will be hit by the airbag with full force and thrown against the seat backrest.

DANGER

If, in exceptional circumstances, a child is being transported in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, the following rules apply:

- **The front passenger front airbag must be switched off and remain switched off.**
- **The child seat must be approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front or side airbags.**
- **Follow the fitting instructions from the child seat manufacturer and observe all warnings.**
- **Push the front passenger seat back as far as possible and adjust it to the highest position, to keep as far away as possible from the front airbag.**
- **Adjust the backrest to an upright position.**
- **Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system suitable for their height and weight.**

Using a child seat on the rear seats

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

When fitting a child seat to a rear seat, the position of the front seat must be adjusted to ensure that the child has sufficient space. Adjust the front seat according to the size of the child seat and child.

Ensure that the front passenger can still maintain a correct sitting position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.

Suitable child seats

The child seat must have been approved by the manufacturer for use on the rear bench seat with side airbag.

Universal child seats in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2, or 3 as specified in ECE-R 44 can be fitted to the rear seats.

The seats are suitable for child seats with the **ISOFIX** system that are specially approved for this vehicle type by ECE-R 44.

ISOFIX child seats approved for use on rear seats

There are different categories of ISOFIX child seats: universal, semi-universal and vehicle-specific.

- If the ISOFIX child seat has universal approval, the child seat must be fastened with the lower anchoring points and the top tether.
- If ISOFIX child seats have semi-universal or vehicle-specific approval, a check must be made prior to use in order to find out whether the child seat has been approved for the vehicle. For this purpose, the child-seat manufacturer supplies the ISOFIX child seat with a list of vehicles for which the respective ISOFIX child seat has been approved. If necessary, contact the child seat manufacturer for an up-to-date list of vehicles.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child seat on the rear bench seat can sustain fatal injuries if they play with lockable seat belts that are not in use.

- **Always secure any lockable seat belts on the rear bench seat that are not in use.**

Securing child seats with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

It is permissible to fasten child seats with **universal** written on the orange label to the seats using the seat belt, but only on the seats marked in the table with a **u**.

Weight class	Front passenger seat	Seats on the rear bench seat
Group 0 up to 10 kg	**u**	**u**
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	**u**	**u**
Group 1 9 to 18 kg	**u**	**u**
Group 2 15 to 25 kg	**u**	**u**
Group 3 22 to 36 kg	**u**	**u**

Securing a child seat using the seat belt

- Read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- When placing the child seat on the front passenger seat, push the seat back as far as possible and adjust the backrest to an upright position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.
- Position the child seat on the seat according to the instructions given by the child seat manufacturer.
- Fasten the seat belt or guide it through the child seat as described in the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it locks securely with a click.
- *In vehicles with lockable seat belts:* pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out and let the belt web roll up on the automatic belt retractor. The belt makes a clicking sound as it rolls up.
- The upper part of the belt must lie snugly and fully over the child seat.
- Pull the seat belt to check that the lower belt strap is locked and can no longer be pulled out.
- *In vehicles with lockable seat belts:* secure any seat belts that are not being used out of the reach of the child in the child seat, by guiding the belt behind the head restraint on the neighbouring seat. When doing this, ensure that the locking mechanism of the seat belt is not triggered! The belt should not make a clicking sound as it rolls up. Let the belt web roll up on the automatic belt retractor.

Removing child seats

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary ⇒.

- Press the red button in the buckle. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.
- Remove the child seat from the vehicle.

WARNING

Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking or steering manoeuvre.

- **Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary.**

Securing child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)

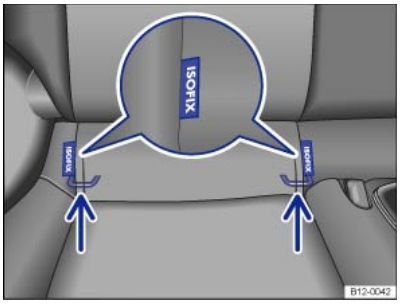


Fig. 59 On vehicle seat: markings identifying the lower anchoring points for child seats

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Two retaining rings, the lower anchoring points, are fitted behind a recess on each outer rear seat.

Overview of installation with ISOFIX

The following table lists where and how ISOFIX child seats can be fastened at the lower anchoring points on the individual seats in the vehicle according to European Directive ECE-R 16.

The body weight permissible for the child seat and the size class **A** to **G** are indicated on the label attached to child seats with universal or semi-universal certification.

	Group (weight class)									
	Group 0: up to 10 kg		**Group 0: up to 10 kg** **Group 0+: up to 13 kg**			**Group 1: 9 to 18 kg**				
Direction of installation	Rear-facing (opposite to driving direction)		Rear-facing (opposite to driving direction)			Rear-facing (opposite to driving direction)		Forward-facing (in driving direction)		
Size class	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Installation on the front passenger seat	Seat without anchoring points, not attached with ISOFIX/LATCH									
Installation on seats on the rear bench seat	IL-SU		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		

X: Seat not suitable for securing an ISOFIX child seat from this group.

IL-SU: Suitable seat for installing an ISOFIX child seat with semi-universal approval, refer to vehicle list from child seat manufacturer.

IUF: Suitable seat for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with universal approval and securing with top tether.

Child seats with fixed attachments

Insert guides can be used to install a child seat with rigid attachments. Insert guides facilitate installation and protect the seat covers. The insert guides in some cases are part of the scope of supply for the child seat or can be obtained from your Volkswagen dealership. If necessary, the insert guides are latched onto the two anchoring points in the vehicle ⇒.

- Observe the child seat manufacturer's instructions when fitting or removing the child seat ⇒.
- Insert the child seat into the retaining rings ⇒ *Fig. 59* in the direction of the arrow. The child seat must click securely into place.

- Pull on both sides of the child seat.

Child seats with adjustable attachment belts

- Observe the child seat manufacturer's instructions when fitting or removing the child seat ⇒⚠.
- Position the child seat on the seat cushion and attach the hooks from the attachment belts onto the retaining rings ⇒ *Fig. 59*.
- Pull the attachment belts to ensure that they are equally taut. The child seat must fit snugly to the vehicle seat.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat.

⚠ WARNING

The lower anchoring points for the child seats are not fastening rings. Fit child seats to the lower anchoring points only.

NOTICE

- **In order to avoid permanent marks on the seats, the insert guides should be removed from the anchoring points when there is no child seat fitted to them.**
- **In order to avoid damage to the seat covers, the seats or the insert guides, the insert guides must always be removed from the anchoring points before folding the rear bench seat forwards.**

Securing child seats with the top tether

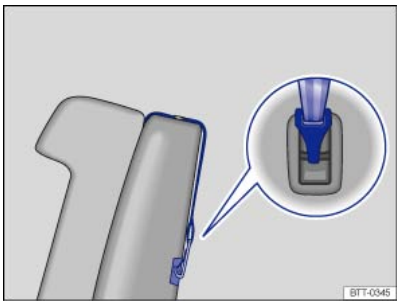


Fig. 60 Example of a fastened top tether

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

- Observe the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer when fitting or removing the child seat ⇒⚠.
- Release the seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- Remove the head restraint located behind the child seat and stow it securely in the vehicle ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.
- Guide the top tether of the child seat back between the backrest and the luggage compartment cover into the luggage compartment.
- Fold back the seat backrest and push it firmly to lock it in place.
- Attach the child seat to the lower anchoring points ⇒ *Securing child seats using lower anchoring points (ISOFIX, LATCH)*.
- Fasten the top tether to the retaining rings in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 60*.
- Stretch the belt so that the child seat is positioned high on the backrest.

Reinstall the head restraints after the child seat has been removed⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.

⚠ WARNING

Child seats attached using the lower anchoring points and top tether must be fitted according to the instructions from the manufacturer. Failure to do so could lead to severe injuries.

- **Never attach more than *one* top tether from a child seat to one retaining ring in the luggage compartment.**
- **Only use the specially fitted retaining rings when attaching the top tether.**
- **Never fasten the top tether to one of the fastening rings.**

Lights and vision

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Indicator lamps*
⇒ *Turn signal and main beam lever*
⇒ *Switching lights on and off*
⇒ *Lights and vision – functions*
⇒ *Attaching adhesive strips to headlights*
⇒ *Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting*
⇒ *Interior and reading lights*

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

The driver is responsible for the correct headlight position and the correct headlight setting.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Changing bulbs ⇒ *Changing bulbs*

WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.

- **Always switch the dipped beam headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.**

WARNING

Setting headlights too high, and the incorrect use of the main beam, could distract and dazzle other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always ensure that the headlights are adjusted correctly.**
- **Never use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users could be dazzled.**

Indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	The rear fog light is switched on.	⇒ *Fog lights:*.
	Left or right turn signal. The indicator lamp will flash twice as fast if one of the turn signals on the vehicle is not working.	If necessary, check the vehicle lighting.
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated.	⇒ *Turn signal and main beam lever*.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**
- **Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel, oil etc.**
- **Broken-down vehicles increase the risk of accidents, both for you and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Turn signal and main beam lever

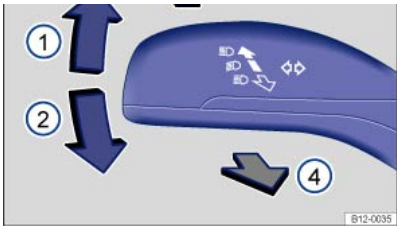


Fig. 61 Turn signal and main beam lever in the basic position

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Move the lever into the required position:

1 Right turn signal ⇒⚠.

2 Left turn signal ⇒⚠.

3 Switch on the main beam ⇒⚠. When the main beam is switched on, an indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

4 Operate the headlight flasher or switch off the main beam. The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as the lever is pulled. The indicator lamp lights up.

Return the lever to the basic position to switch off the current function.

Lane change flash

To operate the lane change flash, push the lever up or down to the point where you incur resistance and then release the lever. The turn signal flashes three times.

This lane change flash function can be deactivated at a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of turn signals, a failure to use turn signals, or forgetting to switch off a turn signal can confuse other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always activate the turn signal in good time when changing lanes and performing overtaking or turning manoeuvres.**
- **Always switch off the turn signal once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the main beam headlights can lead to accidents and serious injuries as the main beam headlights can distract and dazzle other road users.

The turn signal will only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off ⇒ *In an emergency*.

If one turn signal fails, the indicator lamp will start flashing twice as fast.

The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on.

Switching lights on and off

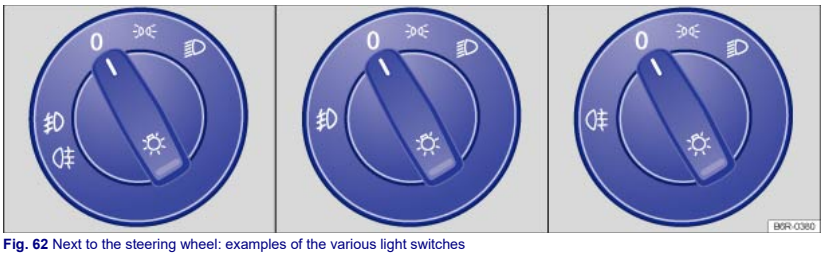


Fig. 62 Next to the steering wheel: examples of the various light switches

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

Turn the light switch to the required position ⇒ *Fig. 62*:

Item	When the ignition is switched off	When the ignition is switched on
0	The fog lights, dipped beam headlights and side lights are switched off.	Lights switched off, daytime headlights are switched on.
	The side lights are switched on.	The side lights are switched on.
	The dipped beam headlights are switched off. The side lights may still light up for a short time.	The dipped beam headlights are switched on.

Fog lights:

The indicator lamps or in the light switch or instrument cluster indicate that the fog lights are switched on.

- To switch the fog light on, pull the light switch out of the position or to the first stop.
- To switch the rear fog light on, pull the light switch out of position or as far as it will go.
- To switch the fog lights off, press the light switch or move it to position 0.

Acoustic warnings if lights are not switched off

If the key is removed from the ignition lock and the driver door is opened, an acoustic warning will sound in any of the following situations. This will remind you to switch off the lights as necessary.

- Permanent parking light on both sides of the vehicle ⇒ *Lights and vision – functions*.
- If the light switch is in position or .
- If the light switch is in position .

WARNING

The side lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.

- **Always switch the dipped beam headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.**

Lights and vision – functions

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Permanent parking light on both sides of the vehicle

When the light switch is in position with the ignition switched off and the vehicle has been locked from the outside, both headlights and the rear lights light up.

Daytime running lights

There are separate lights in the headlights for the daytime running lights.

Only the separate lights light up when the daytime running lights are switched on ⇒⚠.

When the light switch is in position 0, the daytime running lights are switched on every time the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Accidents can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.

- **Never drive with daytime running lights if the street is not sufficiently lit due to weather and lighting conditions. The daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.**
- **The rear lights will not be switched on with the daytime running lights. If the rear lights are not switched on, the vehicle may not be visible to other road users if it is dark, raining, or if visibility is poor.**

In cool or damp weather, the interior of the headlights, rear lights and turn signals may mist up briefly. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the lights on your vehicle.

Attaching adhesive strips to headlights

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic.

Therefore you may have to apply stickers to certain parts of the headlight lenses if you are driving abroad. A qualified workshop can provide you with further information. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Stickers may only be used on the headlights for a limited period. Please contact a qualified workshop for a permanent alteration. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Headlight range control, instrument and switch lighting

Fig. 63 Next to steering wheel: headlight range control

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Headlight range control

Depending on what level it is set to, the headlight range control *⇒ Fig. 63* adjusts the position of the light cones in the headlights according to the load level of the vehicle. This gives the driver the best visibility possible and means that oncoming traffic will not be dazzled ⇒⚠.

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

To adjust, turn the control *⇒ Fig. 63*:

Setting	Vehicle load level[a)]
–	Front seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
1	All seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
2	All seats occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded.
3	Only the driver seat occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded.

Instrument and switch lighting

The instrument and switch lighting will have a constant brightness setting if the side lights or dipped beam are switched on.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.**

[a)] If you have different loads, you can select a position between the settings.

Interior and reading lights

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Button or position	Function
0	Switching off the interior light.
	Switching on the interior light.
	Switching door contact switch on (central position). The interior light is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the key is removed from the ignition lock. The light will go out a few seconds after all the doors are closed, the vehicle is locked or the ignition is switched on.
	Switching the individual reading lights on or off.

The interior lighting and reading lights switch off when the vehicle is locked or after a delay of a few minutes when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock. This prevents the battery from discharging.

Protection from the sun

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Sun visors*

WARNING

Sun visors can restrict vision when folded down.

- **Sun visors should always be replaced in their holder when not in use.**

Sun visors

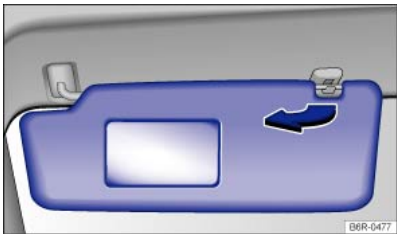


Fig. 64 Sunblind (left-hand side). The right-hand side is a mirror image

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Various positions for the driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Folded down over the windscreen.
- Pulled out of the bracket and swung over towards the door ⇒ *Fig. 64* (arrow).

Vanity mirrors

Some vehicles have a vanity mirror on the folded-down sun visor.

Windscreen wiper and washer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Windscreen wiper lever*
⇒ *Windscreen wiper functions*
⇒ *Service position for the front windscreen wipers*
⇒ *Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level*

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Air recirculation mode ⇒ *Heating, ventilating, cooling*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*

WARNING

Without adequate frost protection, the washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.

- In winter temperatures, the windscreen washer system should only be used when adequate frost protection has been added.
- Never use the windscreen washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system. The anti-freeze mixture may otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict vision.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Windscreen wiper blades should therefore always be changed if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreen properly.

NOTICE

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers. When parking the vehicle in cold weather, it may be helpful to leave the front windscreen wipers in the service position ⇒ *Service position for the front windscreen wipers*.

Windscreen wiper lever

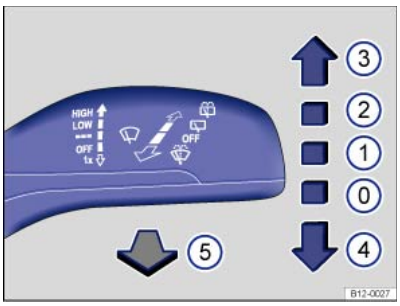


Fig. 65 Operating the front windscreen wiper

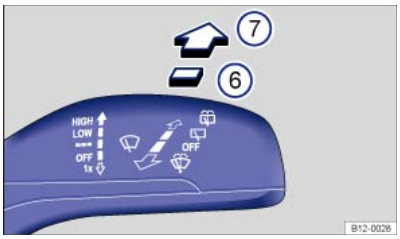


Fig. 66 Operating the rear window wiper

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Move the lever into the required position ⇒ⓘ:

⓪	OFF	Switches off the windscreen wiper.
①	---	Interval wipe for the windscreen.
②	LOW	Slow wipe.
③	HIGH	Fast wipe.
④	1X	Flick wipe – wipes briefly.
⑤		Pulling the lever activates the wash and wipe system for cleaning the windscreen.
⑥		Interval wipe for the rear window. The windscreen wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.
⑦		Pushing the lever activates the wash and wipe system for cleaning the rear window.

NOTICE

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wiper is switched on, the windscreen wiper will continue to wipe on the same setting when the ignition is switched on again. Frost, snow and other obstructions on the windscreen can cause damage to the windscreen wipers and wiper motor.

- **Remove any snow and ice from the wipers and the windows before setting off.**
- **Carefully loosen wiper blades that have become frozen onto the windscreen. Volkswagen recommends using a de-icer spray for this.**

NOTICE

Do not switch on the windscreen wipers when the window is dry. Using the wiper blades when the rear windscreen is dry could cause damage to the rear windscreen.

The windscreen wipers will only function when the ignition is switched on.

The interval wipe for the windscreen depends on the speed of the vehicle. The wipers will wipe more frequently as the vehicle moves faster.

The rear window wiper is switched on automatically if the front windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Windscreen wiper functions

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Windscreen wiper response in various situations:

When the vehicle is stationary:	When switched on, the wipers will temporarily be switched to the next setting down.
When the interval wipe is switched on:	The wiper intervals are adjusted depending on the vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle is travelling, the shorter the interval.

The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again.

Service position for the front windscreen wipers

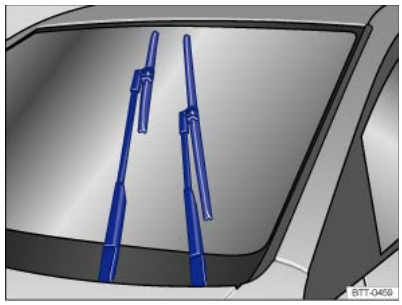


Fig. 67 Wiper blades in service position

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The windscreen wiper arms can be lifted off the windscreen when in the service position ⇒ *Fig. 67*. Carry out the following steps to move the windscreen wipers to the service position:

- The bonnet must be closed ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.
- Switch the ignition on and then off again.
- Briefly press down the windscreen wiper lever ⇒ *Fig. 65④*.

Place the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away. Briefly press the windscreen wiper lever down to bring the windscreen wiper arms back to the original position.

Lifting the windscreen wiper blades

- Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting ⇒.
- When lifting a wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.

NOTICE

- **In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms, the windscreen wiper arms should only be lifted when in the service position.**
- **Always return the windscreen wiper arms to the windscreen before starting your journey.**

Checking and refilling the windscreen washer fluid level

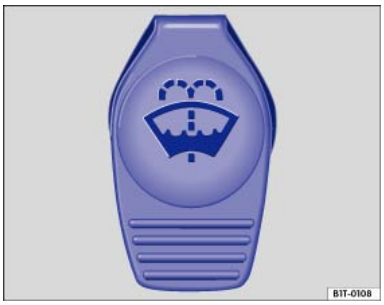


Fig. 68 In the engine compartment: cap of washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The windscreen washer fluid level should be checked regularly and topped up as necessary.

- Open the bonnet ⇒ .
- The washer fluid reservoir is identified by the symbol on the cap ⇒ *Fig. 68*.
- Check whether there is enough windscreen washer fluid in the reservoir.
- To top up, mix clean water with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen ⇒. Observe the dilution instructions on the packaging.
- At low temperatures, add a special anti-freeze agent so that the fluid cannot freeze ⇒.

Recommended windscreen washer fluid

- For warm weather: summer windscreen wash- G 052 184 A1 -. Dilution 1:100 (1 part concentrate, 100 parts water) in the washer fluid reservoir.
- All-year washer fluid- G 052 164 A2 -. Dilution in winter to -18°C (0°F) approximately 1:2 (1 part concentrate, 2 parts water), otherwise dilute one part concentrate to four parts water (1:4) in the washer fluid reservoir.

Capacities

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir has a capacity of about 3 litres.

WARNING

Never mix anti-freeze or other unsuitable additives into the windscreen washer fluid. An oily film may otherwise be left on the screen, and restrict the field of vision.

- **Use clean, clear water with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen.**
- **A suitable anti-freeze agent should be added to the windscreen washer fluid if necessary.**

NOTICE

- **Never mix other cleaning agents with the cleaning agents recommended by Volkswagen. This can cause the ingredients to separate and block the washer jets.**
- **Never mix up service fluids when refilling. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.**

Mirrors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Interior mirror*

⇒ *Exterior mirrors*

For safety reasons it is important that the driver positions the exterior and interior mirrors correctly before starting a journey ⇒.

The driver can use the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror to observe rear traffic and then adjust his or her driving style accordingly. Looking in the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror does not

allow the driver to see the entre side and rear area of the vehicle. The area that cannot be seen is known as the blind spot. Objects and other road users may also be located in the blind spot.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Adjusting the seat position ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*
- Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the exterior and interior mirrors while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Exterior and interior mirrors should only be adjusted when the vehicle is at a standstill.**
- **When parking, changing lane, or performing an overtaking or turning manoeuvre, always pay careful attention to the area around the vehicle as objects and other road users may be located in the blind spot.**
- **Always ensure that the mirrors are positioned correctly and that the rear view is not restricted by ice, snow, condensation or any other objects.**

Interior mirror

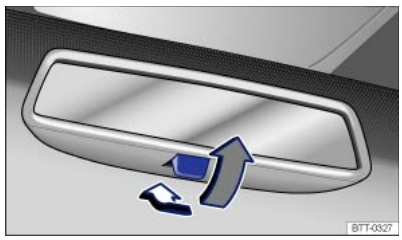


Fig. 69 Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The driver must adjust the interior mirror to ensure clear visibility through the rear window.

The driver's rear view may be restricted or completely obscured by objects such as a sunblind on the rear window, items of clothing stowed on the luggage compartment cover, or a rear window that is covered in ice, snow or dirt.

Switching interior mirror to anti-dazzle

- Basic position: the lever on the lower part of the mirror is pointing towards the windscreen.
- Pull the lever back to switch to anti-dazzle ⇒ *Fig. 69*.

Exterior mirrors

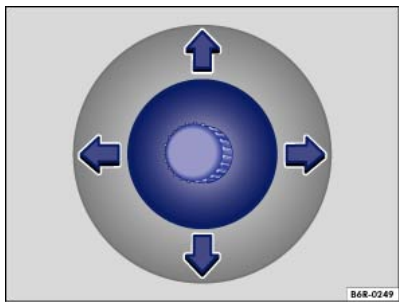


Fig. 70 In the front doors: setting knob for the mechanical exterior mirrors

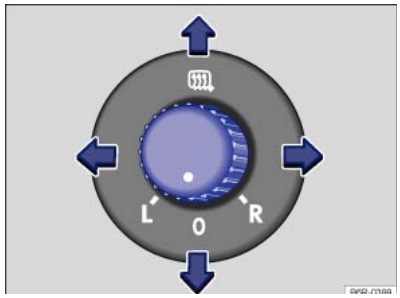


Fig. 71 In the driver door: rotary knob for the electric exterior mirrors

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The exterior mirrors are adjusted by moving the setting knob ⇒ *Fig. 70* or the rotary knob ⇒ *Fig. 71*.

Turn the rotary knob ⇒ *Fig. 71* to the required position:

	Switch on the exterior mirror heating.
L	Set the left exterior mirror to the front, rear, right or left by moving the rotary knob.
0	Neutral position. Exterior mirror heating is switched off, it is not possible to adjust the exterior mirrors.
R	Set the right exterior mirror to the front, rear, right or left by moving the rotary knob.

The exterior mirrors can be folded in and back from the vehicle. To do this, carefully push the exterior mirror housing in towards the side window or back from the side window until the exterior mirror perceptibly engages.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries can be sustained if you do not take care when folding the exterior mirrors in and out.

- **Only fold the exterior mirrors in or out when there is nobody in the path of the mirror.**
- **Always ensure that no fingers are caught between the exterior mirror and the foot of the mirror when the exterior mirror is moved.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly estimating the distance to vehicles travelling behind you can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Curved mirrors (convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and can make objects in the mirror seem smaller and further away than they actually are.**
- **Using curved mirrors to estimate the distance of other vehicles when changing lanes is inaccurate and can cause accidents and severe injuries.**
- **Whenever possible, use the interior mirror to check the exact distance away from vehicles behind or other objects.**
- **Ensure that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.**

NOTICE

Always fold in exterior mirrors before using an automatic car wash.

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.

If there is a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the outside of the mirror.

Transporting

Driving notes

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Stowing items of luggage*
⇒ *Driving with an open tailgate*
⇒ *Driving a loaded vehicle*
⇒ *Vehicle-specific weight ratings*

Heavy objects must always be stowed securely in the luggage compartment and you must ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged in the upright position. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings to secure heavy items. Never exceed the vehicle's maximum payload. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance ⇒⚠.

Additional information and warnings:

- Tailgate ⇒ *Tailgate*
- Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards ⇒ *Seat functions*
- Lights ⇒ *Lights*

- Luggage compartment ⇒ *Luggage compartment*
- Roof carrier ⇒ *Roof carrier*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*

WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior. Please apply the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents:

- **Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.**
- **Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from entering the deployment zones of the side airbag or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident.**
- **Objects should be stowed in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **All objects must be removed from the seat cushion of the front passenger seat if the front passenger backrest is folded forward. Even light and small objects could be pressed into the weight detection mat underneath the seat cushion by the backrest when it is folded forwards and thus send incorrect information to the airbag control units.**
- **The front airbag must be switched off and the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.**
- **Stowed objects must never cause passengers to assume an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Any seat blocked by stowed objects must not be used by any passengers.**

WARNING

The vehicle handling and braking effect may alter significantly if large or heavy objects are being transported.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Accelerate carefully and gently.**
- **Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.**
- **Brake earlier than in normal driving.**

Stowing items of luggage

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Always stow all items of luggage in the vehicle securely.

- Always distribute any loads in the vehicle and on the roof as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible. Position the rear seat backrests securely in the upright position.
- Secure luggage in the luggage compartment to the fastening rings with suitable straps ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- Adjust the headlight range ⇒ *Lights*.
- Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Please read the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*.

NOTICE

Hard objects on the shelf can chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Observe any information concerning the loading of a roof carrier ⇒ *Roof carrier*.

Driving with an open tailgate

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Driving with an open tailgate is particularly dangerous. Ensure that the open tailgate and any objects are secured properly, and take appropriate measures to reduce the quantity of toxic exhaust fumes entering the vehicle.

WARNING

Driving with an unlocked or open tailgate can cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the tailgate closed.
- Always stow all items in the luggage compartment securely. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure other road users.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this can cause the open tailgate to move unpredictably.
- Any objects protruding from the luggage compartment must be marked to ensure that they are visible to other road users. Comply with legal regulations.
- Any objects protruding from the luggage compartment must never be held in position by the tailgate.
- If it is necessary to drive with the tailgate open, all luggage racks and cargo stowed on the rack must be removed from the tailgate.

WARNING

Poisonous exhaust fumes can enter the vehicle interior when the tailgate is open. This could result in loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, serious injury and accidents.

- Always drive with the tailgate closed in order to prevent toxic gases from entering the vehicle.
- If exceptional circumstances require you to drive with an open tailgate, you must do the following to reduce the quantity of toxic exhaust fumes that could enter the vehicle:
  - Close the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof.
  - Switch off air recirculation mode.
  - Open all vents in the dash panel.
  - Switch the blowers to the highest setting.

NOTICE

The vehicle length and height are different when the tailgate is open.

Driving a loaded vehicle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

- Stow all items of luggage securely ⇒ *Stowing items of luggage*.
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.
- If applicable, heed the information about driving with a roof carrier ⇒ *Roof carrier*.

WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Secure objects properly to prevent them from sliding.
- Use suitable straps when securing heavy objects.
- Engage the rear seat backrests securely in an upright position.

Vehicle-specific weight ratings

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data. All data in this manual apply to the basic model. The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule and the official vehicle documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.

The values quoted here may differ if additional equipment is fitted, for different models or for special vehicles.

The values for the kerb weight in the following table apply for the road-ready vehicle with driver (75 kg), service fluids including fuel tank carrying 90% of its capacity and, if applicable, tools and

spare tyre ⇒⚠. Additional equipment and retrofitted accessories increase the stated kerb weight and reduce the maximum permitted load accordingly.

The load comprises the weights of the following:

- Passengers
- All luggage
- Roof load including roof carrier system

Petrol engines

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
44 kW	CHYA	MG5	929 kg – 1,032 kg	1,290 kg	680 kg	640 kg
		AG5	932 kg – 1,035 kg			
55 kW	CHYB	MG5	929 kg – 1,032 kg	1,290 kg	680 kg	640 kg
		AG5	932 kg – 1,035 kg			

Natural gas engine

Engine power	EC	Gearbox type	Kerb weight	Gross vehicle weight rating	Gross axle weight rating, front	Gross axle weight rating, rear
50 kW	CPGA	MG5	1,031 kg – 1,118 kg	1,370 kg	700 kg	700 kg

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weights and axle loads can cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- **The actual axle loads must never exceed the maximum permissible axle loads.**
- **The payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle. Adjust your speed accordingly.**

NOTICE

The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment, they should be placed either in front of or over the rear axle in order to minimise the effect on the vehicle's handling.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards
⇒ Luggage compartment cover
⇒ Variable luggage compartment floor
⇒ Fastening rings
⇒ Bag hook

Heavy objects must always be transported in the luggage compartment and you must ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged in the upright position. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings. Never exceed the vehicle's maximum payload. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance ⇒⚠.

Additional information and warnings:

- Airbag system *⇒ Airbag system*
- Lights *⇒ Lights*
- Transporting *⇒ Driving notes*
- Wheels and tyres *⇒ Wheels and tyres*

WARNING

When the vehicle is not in use or is not being supervised, always lock the doors and tailgate to reduce the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children unattended, especially when the tailgate is open. Children could make their way into the luggage compartment, close the tailgate and be unable to get out. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Do not travel with people in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior. Please apply the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from being thrown through the vehicle interior and entering the deployment zone of the side airbags or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the luggage compartment cover or on the dash panel.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely.

WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and increases the braking distance. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and can cause serious injury.

- Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and the centre of gravity.
- The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle.
- Always secure heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far in front of the rear axle as possible.

NOTICE

Hard objects could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

The ventilation openings between the rear window and the luggage compartment cover must not be covered as this would prevent stale air escaping from the vehicle.

Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards

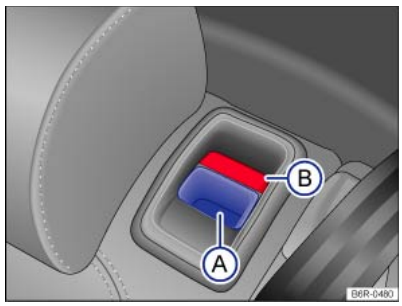


Fig. 72 Rear bench seat: release button Ⓐ; red marking Ⓑ

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The rear seat backrest can be folded forward to extend the luggage compartment.

Folding the rear seat backrest forwards

- Push the head restraint all the way down or remove it, if necessary ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position* and stow it in a safe place.
- Pull the release button forwards ⇒ *Fig. 72Ⓐ* and, at the same time, fold the backrest forwards.

- The rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see a red marking in the button ⇒ *Fig. 72⑥*.
- Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards.

Folding the rear seat backrest backwards

- Fold back the rear backrest and push it firmly into the lock until it clicks securely into place ⇒⚠.
- The red marking on the release button ⇒ *Fig. 72⑥* should no longer be visible.
- The rear seat backrest must always be securely engaged.
- If necessary, fit the head restraints and adjust to the correct position ⇒ *Sitting correctly and safely*.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries can be caused if the rear backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- **Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the rear seat backrest.**
- **Always keep hands, fingers, feet or other body parts away from the seat area when folding the rear seat backrest forwards and backwards.**
- **Ensure that each rear seat backrest engages securely in the upright position, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not work properly. If a seat is occupied and the backrest has not clicked securely into place, the seat occupant and rear seat backrest may move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.**
- **The backrest has not been secured properly if you can see a red mark on the button ⇒ *Fig. 72⑥*. Always ensure that the red marking is never visible when the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.**
- **Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards or is not clicked securely into place.**

NOTICE

Before folding the rear seat backrests forwards, adjust the front seats so that the rear head restraints or rear seat cushions do not rub against the front seats. If necessary, remove the head restraint ⇒ *Sitting correctly and safely* and stow it in a safe place.

Luggage compartment cover

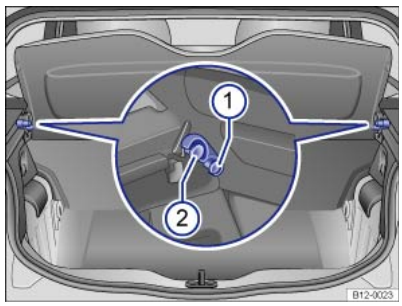


Fig. 73 In the luggage compartment: removing and installing the luggage compartment cover

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Light items of clothing can be stowed on the luggage compartment cover. Please ensure that the view to the rear of the vehicle is not obstructed.

Folding luggage compartment cover up or down

Lift up the luggage compartment cover and push into the side holders ⇒ *Fig. 73①*. When doing this ensure that the luggage compartment cover is correctly secured in position.

To *return* to the original position, push the luggage compartment down out of the holders.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

Pull the luggage compartment cover up and out of the side retainers ⇒ *Fig. 73②*.

Fitting the luggage compartment cover

Push the luggage compartment cover down into the side retainers ⇒ *Fig. 73②*.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured or are secured incorrectly, or animals on the luggage compartment cover, could cause serious injuries in any sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident.

- **Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp items either loose or in bags on the luggage compartment cover.**
- **Never transport pets on the luggage compartment cover.**
- **Never drive with the luggage compartment cover upright. Always fold it down or remove it before your journey.**

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the luggage compartment cover:

- **Always ensure that the luggage compartment cover is fitted securely in the side retainers.**
- **The luggage compartment should only be filled so that the luggage compartment cover does not push down on the load when the tailgate is closed.**

Variable luggage compartment floor

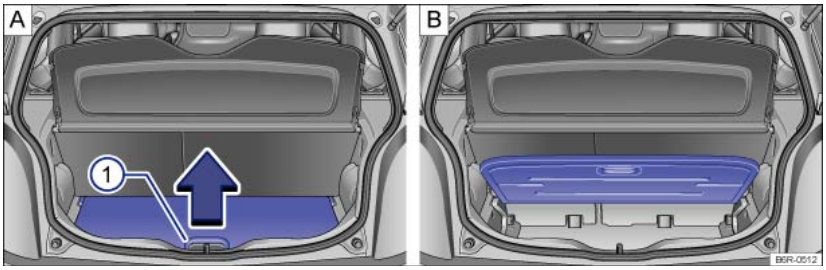


Fig. 74 A: Opening the variable luggage compartment floor B: Variable luggage compartment floor lifted up

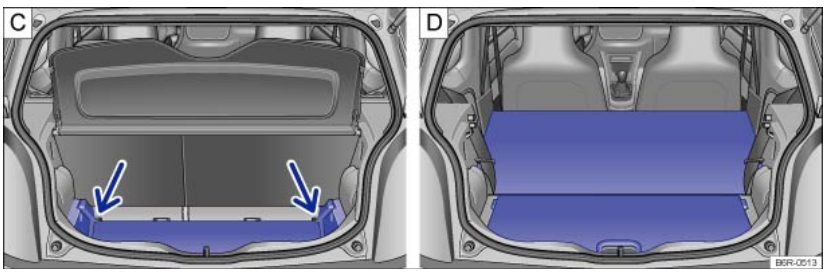


Fig. 75 C: Extending the luggage compartment downwards D: Extending the luggage compartment to the front

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Opening and closing the luggage compartment floor

To *open*, lift the grip ⇒ *Fig. 74①* in the direction of the arrow and lift the luggage compartment floor up fully ⇒ *Fig. 74* **B**.

To *close*, guide the luggage compartment cover down.

Extending the luggage compartment downwards

- Lift the luggage compartment floor and push down ⇒ *Fig. 75* **C** (arrows).
- Place the luggage compartment floor on the floor covering.
- If necessary, fold the backrests forwards ⇒ *Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards*.

Extending the luggage compartment to the front

- Remove the luggage compartment cover ⇒ *Luggage compartment cover*.
- Remove rear head restraints ⇒ *Adjusting the seat position*.
- Fold the rear seat backrests forwards ⇒ *Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards*.
- If necessary, expand the luggage compartment downwards.

NOTICE

Never drop the luggage compartment floor, but rather guide it back down. The trims or the luggage compartment floor could be damaged.

Fastening rings

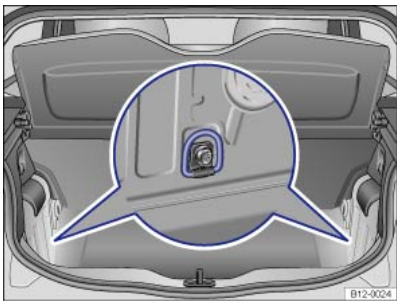


Fig. 76 In the luggage compartment: fastening rings

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

At the front of the luggage compartment are fastening rings for securing luggage ⇒ *Fig. 76*.

The fastening rings have to be folded out before they can be used.

WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged securing straps could rip in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- **Always use suitable and undamaged securing straps.**
- **Attach securing straps securely to the fastening rings.**
- **Loose objects in the luggage compartment can suddenly slide and change the way the vehicle handles.**
- **Small and light objects should also be secured.**
- **Never exceed the maximum load rating of the fastening rings when securing objects.**
- **Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.**

The maximum load rating of the fastening rings is approximately 3.5 kN.

Suitable fastening belts and luggage stowage systems are available from a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Bag hook

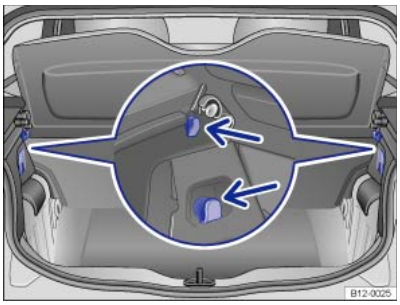


Fig. 77 In the luggage compartment: bag hook

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Bag hooks are located on the upper left and right-hand side of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Never use the bag hooks as fastening rings for straps. The bag hook could break off during a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

NOTICE

The bag hooks can only carry a maximum of 1.5 kg.

Roof carrier

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Attaching the mounts and load carrier system*
⇒ *Loading the load carrier system*

The roof of the vehicle has been designed for optimum aerodynamic effect. It is therefore no longer possible to attach conventional roof carrier systems to a rain channel on the roof.

As the rain channels have been integrated into the roof for better aerodynamics, only mounts or roof carriers approved by Volkswagen can be used.

When should the roof carrier be removed?

- When it is no longer being used.
- When the vehicle is driving through a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the required clearance height, e.g. in a garage.

Additional information and warnings:

- Lights ⇒ *Lights*
- Transporting ⇒ *Transporting*
- Driving with respect for the environment ⇒ *Driving with respect for the environment*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

When transporting heavy or bulky objects in the roof carrier, the vehicle's handling will change due to a shift in the centre of gravity and an increased susceptibility to crosswinds.

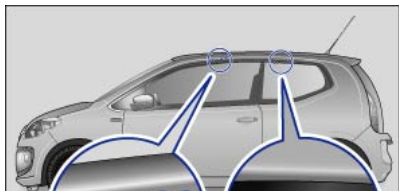
- **Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.**
- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle aerodynamics, centre of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**

NOTICE

- **Always remove the roof carrier before driving through an automatic car wash.**
- **The vehicle's height is changed by the installation of the roof carrier system and the load secured on it. Check and compare the height of the vehicle with clearance heights, e.g. for underpasses and garage doors.**
- **The roof carrier system and its load must not obstruct you from opening and closing the electric panorama sliding/tilting glass roof and tailgate. The roof aerial must also remain unaffected.**
- **When opening the tailgate, take care not to let it hit the roof load.**

Driving with a fitted roof carrier will increase air resistance and thus increase fuel consumption.

Attaching the mounts and load carrier system



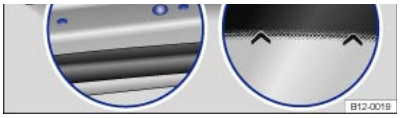


Fig. 78 Attachment points for the mounts on 2-door vehicles (both sides)

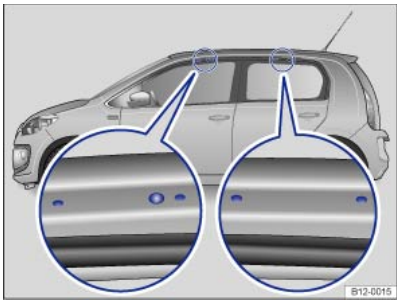


Fig. 79 Attachment points for the mounts on 4-door vehicles (both sides)

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Mounts serve as a basis for special load carrier systems. Special load carriers must then be added to transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surfboards or boats safely. Suitable accessories are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

Mounts and load carriers must always be attached correctly. You must observe the fitting instructions that were delivered with the roof carrier system.

Attaching the mounts and load carrier system

2-door vehicles: the holes or markings for the front mount securing points are located on the underside of the roof side members ⇒ *Fig. 78***A** (left-hand magnification). The holes or markings for the securing points are only visible when the door is open. The markings for attaching at the rear are at the top on the side windows ⇒ *Fig. 78* (right magnification).

4-door vehicles: the holes or markings for the mount securing points are located on the underside of the roof side member and are visible only when the doors are open ⇒ *Fig. 79*.

The roof carrier must **only** be attached at the markings shown in the illustration ⇒⚠.

After fitting the mounts properly as per the instructions provided, attach the load carrier to the mount.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly attaching and using the mounts and load carrier could cause the whole system to fall off the roof. This could cause accidents and injuries.

- **Always observe the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Use mounts and load carriers only when they are undamaged and fitted correctly.**
- **The roof carrier may be attached at the markings shown in the illustrations only ⇒ *Fig. 78* or ⇒ *Fig. 79*.**
- **Fit mounts and load carriers correctly.**
- **Check the bolts and anchorage points before starting your journey and adjust as necessary after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.**
- **Special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. should always be properly installed.**
- **Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the mounts and roof carrier system.**

Read and note the fitting instructions for the mounts and the load carrier system provided and always carry the instructions in the vehicle.

Loading the load carrier system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Loads can only be attached securely when the roof carrier system is fitted correctly ⇒⚠.

Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is **50 kg**. The roof load limit refers to the combined weight of the load carrier, the mounts and the load carried on the roof ⇒⚠.

Ensure that you know the weight of the mounts, roof carrier system and the items to be transported on the roof - weigh them if necessary. Never exceed the maximum permissible roof load.

However, if you are using a carrier system with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the load carrier system which is listed in the fitting instructions.

Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly ⇒.

Checking the fittings

After the mounts and load carrier have been attached, check the bolted connections and fastenings once you have travelled a short distance and then at regular intervals.

WARNING

Accidents and vehicle damage can occur if the maximum permitted roof load is exceeded.

- **Never exceed the quoted roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads, and the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle.**
- **Do not exceed the weight rating of the roof carrier system, even if the maximum roof load has not been reached.**
- **Secure heavy objects as far forwards as possible and distribute the load evenly.**

WARNING

Loose and incorrectly secured loads could fall off the load carrier and cause accidents and injuries.

- **Always use suitable and undamaged securing straps.**
- **Secure loads properly.**

Towing a trailer

Information on towing

The vehicle is **not** approved for towing a trailer. The vehicle is not factory-fitted with a towing bracket and a towing bracket cannot be retrofitted.

WARNING

Fitting a towing bracket on the vehicle while the vehicle is in operation can lead to accidents and cause serious injuries.

- **Never fit a towing bracket on the vehicle.**
- **The bracket could be released from the vehicle during the journey.**

NOTICE

Fitting towing brackets of any kind can lead to serious vehicle damage.

Practical equipment

Stowage area

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Stowage compartment on the driver side*
⇒ *Stowage compartment in the front centre console*
⇒ *Stowage compartment with cover on the front passenger side*
⇒ *Open stowage compartment on the front passenger side*
⇒ *Stowage compartment in the rear centre console*
⇒ *Other stowage areas*

Only use stowage compartments to stow light or smaller objects.

Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the interior ⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- ⇒Booklet*Radio*,

WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not stow any pets or any hard, heavy or sharp objects in the vehicle's open stowage compartments, on the dash panel, on the shelf behind the rear seats, or in items of clothing and bags in the vehicle interior.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- The foot mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- No additional foot mats or other floor coverings should be placed over the fitted foot mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

- Hard objects on the shelf can chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
- Do not stow any temperature-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Hot and cold temperatures could damage or destroy them.
- Objects stored in the vehicle that are made from transparent materials, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

The ventilation openings between the rear window and the luggage compartment cover must not be covered as this would prevent stale air escaping from the vehicle.

Stowage compartment on the driver side

Fig. 80 On the driver side: stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

There may be a stowage compartment located on the driver side.

WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not stow any animals, or any hard or pointed objects in the open stowage area.

Stowage compartment in the front centre console

Fig. 81 In the centre console at front: stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The stowage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 81* can also be used as a holder for drinks ⇒ *Drink holder* or for the ashtray ⇒ *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*.

A 12-volt socket ⇒ *Socket in the vehicle* may be located in the stowage compartment.

Stowage compartment with cover on the front passenger side

Fig. 82 Stowage compartment on the front passenger side

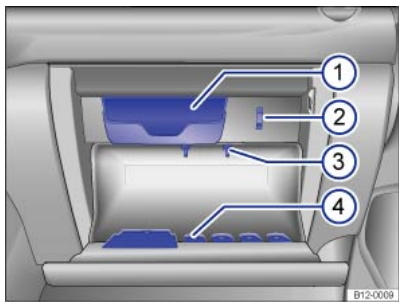


Fig. 83 Open stowage compartment on the front passenger side

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

There may be a stowage compartment with cover located on the front passenger side.

Opening and closing the stowage compartment cover

To *open*, pull up the opening lever ⇒ *Fig. 82①*.

To *close*, press the cover upwards until it engages.

Glasses compartment

A pair of glasses can be stored in the stowage compartment on the front passenger side.

The glasses compartment is located at the top of the stowage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 83①*.

Holders

A note block holder ⇒ *Fig. 83②* is located next to the glasses compartment and a pen holder ③, a map compartment and a coin holder are located on the inside of the stowage compartment cover ④.

⚠ WARNING

An open stowage compartment on the front passenger side can increase the risk of serious injury in the case of an accident or during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres.

- **Always keep the stowage compartment in the armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.**

NOTICE

In some vehicle models, the stowage compartment on the front passenger side contains apertures. Small objects could fall through the apertures and become trapped behind the trim. This could cause unusual noises and damage to the vehicle. For this reason, small objects should not be stowed in the stowage compartment apart from in the designated areas.

Open stowage compartment on the front passenger side

Fig. 84 Open stowage compartment on front passenger side

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

There may be an open stowage compartment located on the front passenger side.

Holder

A bag hook is located at the open stowage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 84①*.

⚠ WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- **Do not stow any animals, or any hard or pointed objects in the open stowage area.**

Stowage compartment in the rear centre console

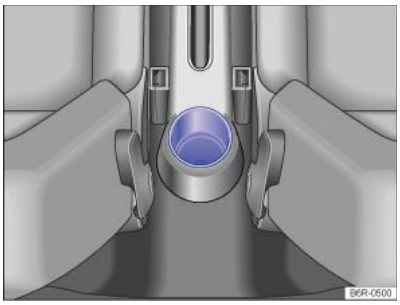


Fig. 85 In the rear centre console: stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The drink holder in the rear centre console ⇒ *Drink holder* can be used as a stowage area.

Other stowage areas

Fig. 86 In front of the rear seats: stowage compartment in 2-door vehicles

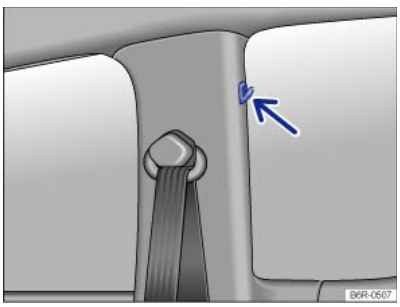


Fig. 87 Coat hooks on the centre door pillars

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Coat hooks

Coat hooks ⇒ *Fig. 87* are located on the centre door pillars (arrow).

Other stowage areas:

- In the front door trims ⇒ *Vehicle interior*.
- In front of the rear seats ⇒ *Fig. 86*.
- On top of the luggage compartment cover for light items of clothing.
- Bag hooks in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- In the upper part of the centre console instead of the radio ⇒ *Fig. 7⑥*.
- Coat hooks on the centre door pillars ⇒ *Fig. 87*.

⚠ WARNING

Hanging up items of clothing can restrict the driver's field of vision and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always hang items of clothing in such a way that they do not restrict the driver's field of vision.**
- **The clothes hook in the vehicle should only be used for transporting light items of clothing. Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets.**

Drink holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Drink holder in centre console*

Drink holder

Bottle holders for bottles containing up to 1.5 litres are located in the open stowage areas of the driver and front passenger doors.

Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the interior ⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the interior*

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the drink holders can cause injury.

- **Do not place hot drink containers in the drink holders. Hot drinks in a drink holder could be spilled and cause scalding in any sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.**
- **Ensure that drink bottles or any other objects do not enter the driver footwell and obstruct the pedals while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never place heavy cups, food or any other heavy items in the drink holder. These heavy objects could be flung through the vehicle interior during an accident and cause serious injuries.**

⚠ WARNING

Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or crack in extremely cold temperatures.

- **Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.**

NOTICE

Do not leave any open drink containers in the drink holder while the vehicle is in motion. Drinks that are spilled, for example during braking, can damage the vehicle and the vehicle electric system.

Drink holder in centre console

Fig. 88 In the front centre console: drink holder with clip

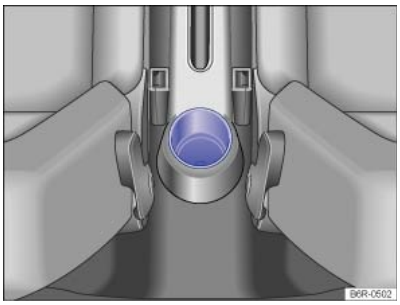


Fig. 89 In the rear centre console: drink holder

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Drink holders are located in the front and rear centre consoles.

Securing drink containers in the drink holder

Depending on the level of vehicle equipment, the front drink holder may be fitted with a clip that can folded in and out *⇒ Fig. 88*.

Fold the drink holder clip forwards.

Place the drink container in the drink holder so that it is held securely by the clip.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ Ashtray
⇒ Cigarette lighter

Additional information and warnings:

- Electrical socket *⇒ Socket*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts *⇒ Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the ashtray and cigarette lighter could cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- **Never put paper or any other combustible materials in the ashtray.**

Ashtray

Fig. 90 In the front centre console: opening the ashtray

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Opening and closing the ashtray

To *open*, lift the ashtray cover in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 90*.

To *close*, push the ashtray cover down as far as it will go.

Emptying the ashtray

- Lift the ashtray out of the drink holder.
- Once it has been emptied, place the ashtray back into the drink holder from above.

Cigarette lighter

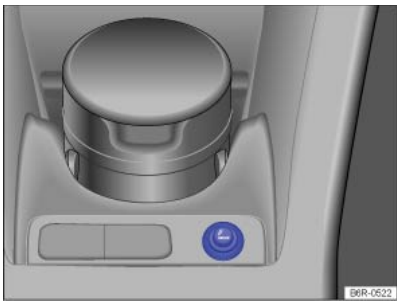


Fig. 91 In the front centre console: cigarette lighter

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

- With the ignition switched on, press in the knob on the cigarette lighter ⇒ *Fig. 91*.
- Wait for the lighter to pop out.
- Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the tobacco product on the glowing spiral ⇒⚠.
- Insert the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- **Always use the cigarette lighter properly, and only use it to light tobacco products.**
- **Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. The cigarette lighter can be used when the ignition is switched on.**

The opening for the cigarette lighter can also be used as a 12-volt socket ⇒ .

Socket

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Socket in the vehicle*

Electrical equipment can be connected to the socket in the vehicle.

All devices connected must be in good condition and fault-free.

Additional information and warnings:

- Cigarette lighter ⇒ *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*

WARNING

Improper use of the socket and electrical accessories can cause fires and other severe injuries.

- **Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. The socket and the devices connected to it can be used when the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the electrical device gets too hot, switch off the device immediately and disconnect it from the socket.**

NOTICE

- **In order to prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electricity, such as solar panels or battery chargers for charging the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt socket.**
- **Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.**
- **In order to avoid damage due to voltage fluctuation, always switch off any electrical consumers connected to the 12-volt socket before switching the ignition or the engine on or off. When the start/stop system automatically switches off and restarts the engine, it is not necessary to switch off any connected electrical consumers.**
- **Never connect electrical devices requiring more electrical power to a 12-volt socket. The vehicle's electrical system can be damaged if the maximum power output is exceeded.**

Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.

Unshielded devices can cause interference with radio reception and vehicle electronics.

Interference with AM radio reception could occur if electrical devices are used in the vicinity of the aerial.

Socket in the vehicle

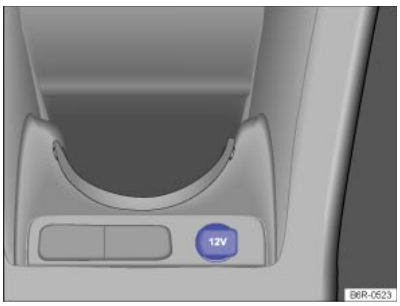


Fig. 92 Front centre console: 12-volt socket in the stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Maximum power rating

Electrical socket	Maximum power rating
12-volt	120 watts

The maximum power rating of the sockets may not be exceeded. The power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

If two or more devices are connected at the same time, ensure that the overall power consumption of all connected electrical devices never exceeds 190 watts ⇒.

12-volt socket

The 12-volt socket is located in the ashtray in the front centre console ⇒ *Fig. 92* and works only when the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Electrical consumers should therefore only be plugged into the sockets when the engine is running.

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

NOTICE

- **Observe the operating instructions for any device that you plug into the socket.**
- **Never exceed the maximum power rating as this could damage the whole vehicle electrical system.**
- **12-volt socket:**
  - **Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with the relevant guidelines on electromagnetic compatibility.**
  - **Never feed electricity into the socket.**

While driving

Starting the engine, changing gear and parking

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Ignition lock*
⇒ *Starting the engine*
⇒ *Stopping the engine*
⇒ *Electronic immobilizer*

Immobilizer display

If the vehicle key is not valid or there is a fault in the system, then SAFE may be displayed in the instrument cluster. The engine cannot be started ⇒ *Electronic immobilizer*.

Push-starting or towing

For technical reasons, your vehicle **must not** be push-started or tow-started. Use jump leads to start the engine instead.

Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set ⇒ *Vehicle key set*
- Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Steering ⇒ *Steering*
- Pull-away assist systems ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- Filling the tank ⇒ *Filling the tank*
- Fuel ⇒ *Fuel*
- Manual opening and closing ⇒ *Manual opening and closing*
- Starting the engine with jump leads ⇒ *Starting the engine with jump leads*
- Tow starting and towing ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*

WARNING

Switching the engine off while the vehicle is moving makes it more difficult to stop the vehicle. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and to accidents and severe injuries.

- Braking and steering support systems, the airbag system, the belt tensioners and other items of safety equipment in the vehicle are only active when the engine is running.
- The engine should only be switched off when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

The risk of serious injury can be reduced with the engine running or when starting the engine.

- Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed spaces. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless toxic gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.
- Never leave the engine running if you leave the vehicle unattended. The vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected may happen that may cause damage and serious injuries.
- Never use a start booster. A start booster can explode and cause the engine to suddenly run at high revs.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.
- Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields.

Ignition lock

Fig. 93 Vehicle key positions

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The steering lock can be activated when there is no vehicle key in the ignition lock.

Vehicle key positions ⇒ ***Fig. 93***

0 Ignition switched off. The vehicle key can be removed.

1 Ignition switched on. The steering lock can be released.

2 Engine is started. Release the vehicle key as soon as the engine starts. Once released, the vehicle key moves back to position ①.

WARNING

Always take care when using the vehicle key as you could cause accidents or serious injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated. This can cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.

If the vehicle key is left in the ignition for a long period with the engine switched off, the vehicle battery could discharge.

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The steps should only be carried out in the specified order.

	Manual gearbox	Automated manual gearbox
1.	Depress the brake pedal and hold it until step 5 has been completed.	Turn the vehicle key to position ⇒ *Fig. 93①*.
2.	Fully depress the clutch pedal until the engine has been started.	Depress the brake pedal and hold it until step 5 has been completed.
3.	Shift the gear stick to a neutral position.	Place the selector lever in position **N**.
4.	Turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position ⇒ *Fig. 93②* – do not depress the accelerator.	
5.	Release the vehicle key once the engine has started.	
6.	If the engine does not start, stop the procedure and repeat it after approximately one minute.	
7.	Release the handbrake if you wish to pull away ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*.	

Natural gas engines

The gas engine will only start with gas. It is possible to start the engine with petrol under the following conditions:

- Very low outside temperatures.
- The mixture adjustment after filling is not yet complete.
- Natural gas tank is empty.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly, particularly if a gear or position is selected, and cause accidents and serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

A start booster can explode or suddenly cause the engine to run at high revs.

- **Never use a start booster.**

NOTICE

- **The starter and the engine can be damaged if you attempt to start the engine while the vehicle is in motion or if the engine is started again immediately after it has been switched off.**
- **When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.**
- **Do not push-start or tow-start the engine. Unburnt fuel can damage the catalytic converter.**

Do not warm up the engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary. Instead, pull off as soon as there is good visibility through the windows. This helps the engine to reach operating temperature more quickly and reduces emissions.

Components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine is started.

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

Stopping the engine

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The steps should only be carried out in the specified order.

	Manual gearbox	Automated manual gearbox
1.	The vehicle must be completely stationary ⇒⚠.	
2.	Depress the brake pedal and hold it until step 4 has been completed.	
3.		Place the selector lever in position **D** or **R**.
4.	Apply the handbrake firmly ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*.	
5.	Turn the vehicle key to position ⇒ *Fig. 93②*.	
6.	Select 1st gear or reverse gear.	

WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injuries.

- **The airbags and belt tensioners will not work if the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake servo will not work when the engine is switched off. More force is required on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering will not function if the engine is switched off, and more force will be required to steer the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition, the steering lock can activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.**

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. In order to avoid damage to the engine, allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.

After the engine is switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may run on for some minutes, even if the ignition is switched off or the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically.

Electronic immobilizer

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The immobilizer helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

There is a chip in the key. It automatically deactivates the immobilizer when the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine Volkswagen vehicle key with the correct code. Coded vehicle keys are available from a Volkswagen dealership *⇒ Vehicle key set*.

If a non-authorised vehicle key has been used, the display in the instrument cluster will show SAFE. The vehicle cannot be used if this occurs. Remove the non-authorised vehicle key from the ignition lock and used an authorised vehicle key.

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine Volkswagen key.

Changing gear

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ Warning and indicator lamp
⇒ Pedals
⇒ Manual gearbox: selecting a gear
⇒ Automated manual gearbox: selecting a gear
⇒ Changing gear with Tiptronic
⇒ Driving with an automated manual gearbox
⇒ Fault in the automated manual gearbox
⇒ Gear-change indicator (manual gearbox)

The following will occur if reverse gear is selected and the ignition is switched on:

- The reverse light comes on.
- The rear window wiper will move once when the windscreen wipers are switched on.
- The ParkPilot may switch on.

Additional information and warnings:

- Overview of the centre console *⇒ Overview of the centre console*
- Instruments *⇒ Instruments*
- Braking, stopping and parking *⇒ Braking, stopping and parking*
- Pull-away assist systems *⇒ Pull-away assist systems*
- ParkPilot *⇒ ParkPilot*
- Engine management system and exhaust purification system *⇒ Engine management system and exhaust purification system*

- Tow-starting and towing ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **The kickdown function or fast acceleration should only be used if the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.**

WARNING

Never ride the brake pedal. Do not overuse the brake pedal. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.

NOTICE

- **Never let the brakes rub by applying light pressure to the brake when it is not necessary to brake. This will increase levels of wear.**
- **Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or in vehicles with an automated manual gearbox in Tiptronic mode, move the selector lever to a lower position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brakes could otherwise overheat and possibly fail. The brakes should only be used to slow or stop the vehicle.**

Warning and indicator lamp

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	Fault in the automated manual gearbox.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can cause considerable damage to the gearbox ⇒ *Fault in the automated manual gearbox*.
	Gears in the automated manual gearbox cannot be selected correctly.	Switch the ignition on and off. If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the automated manual gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop .
	Automated manual gearbox temporarily overheated.	Allow the gearbox to cool down in selector lever position N. If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the automated manual gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop .
	Selector lever for the automated manual gearbox in position N and the brake pedal not depressed.	To select a position, press the brake pedal ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*.
	In conjunction with the yellow indicator lamp for gearbox temperature: automated manual gearbox overheated.	Depress the break pedal ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking* and allow the gearbox to cool down. Do not perform pulling-away manoeuvres in the meantime. If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the automated manual gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop .
	In conjunction with the flashing display on the instrument cluster: the selector lever for the automated manual gearbox is not in position N, prompt to start the engine.	Move the selector lever to N and start the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Flashing: vehicle with an automated manual gearbox is not secured from rolling away.	Apply the handbrake ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*.
N	You are prompted in conjunction with the indicator lamp to depress the brake pedal: prompt to start the engine.	Move the selector lever to N and start the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.
	During forward travel: attempt to place automated manual gearbox selector lever into position R.	Stop the car and move the selector lever to position N so that it can then be moved to position R.
	The selector lever for the automated manual gearbox has been moved to position R or D but the brake pedal was not depressed.	Depress the brake pedal ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*, move the selector lever to position N and then back to the required position R or D.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- **Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**
- **If the vehicle is stationary or has to be parked for repairs, always park the vehicle at a safe distance from the road, switch on the hazard warning lights, switch off the engine and take other precautionary measures in order to warn traffic behind you.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Pedals

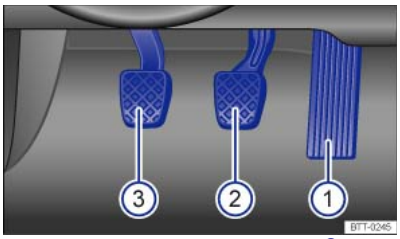


Fig. 94 Pedals in vehicles with a manual gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal, ③ clutch pedal

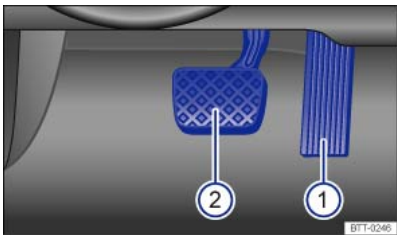


Fig. 95 Pedals in vehicles with an automated manual gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If a brake circuit fails, you will have to depress the brake pedal further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- **Please ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.**
- **The foot mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.**
- **No additional foot mats or other floor coverings should be placed over the fitted foot mat.**
- **Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.**

NOTICE

The pedals must be freely operable at all times. For example, the braking distance to fully stop the vehicle will be longer if a braking circuit is faulty. The brake pedal will have to be depressed further and harder than normal.

Manual gearbox: selecting a gear

Fig. 96 Gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The positions of the individual driving gears are shown on the gearshift lever ⇒ *Fig. 96*.

- Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal.
- Move the gear lever to the required position ⇒⚠.
- Release the clutch to engage.

In models for certain countries the clutch pedal will have to be depressed fully in order to start the engine.

Selecting reverse gear

- Reverse gear should only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.
- Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal ⇒⚠.
- Shift the gear lever to the neutral position.
- Push the gearshift lever fully to the right and then back into the reverse gear position ⇒ *Fig. 96Ⓐ*.
- Release the clutch to engage.

Shifting down

You should always select the next immediate gear when shifting down a gear whilst the vehicle is in motion. The engine revs should not be too high when doing this ⇒⚠. Damage to the clutch and the gearbox could occur if at high speeds or high engine revs one or more gears are skipped when shifting down gear, even if the clutch is not released when doing this ⇒ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released. This also applies when the handbrake is on.

- **Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.**

⚠ WARNING

Shifting gears incorrectly to a lower gear can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, which can cause accidents and serious injuries.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Serious damage to the clutch and gearbox can occur if the gear stick on the manual gearbox is shifted to too low a gear when travelling at high speeds or at high revs. This also applies if the clutch remains depressed and the gears do not engage.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Please note the following to help avoid damage and premature wear:

- **Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure from your hand is passed onto the selector forks in the gearbox.**
- **Ensure that the vehicle has come to a full stop before engaging reverse gear.**
- **Always fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.**
- **Do not hold the vehicle by riding the clutch on a slope with the engine running.**

Automated manual gearbox: selecting a gear

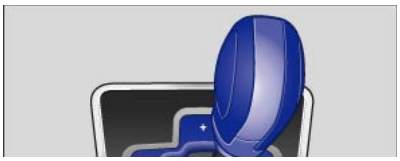


Fig. 97 Selector lever for the automated manual gearbox

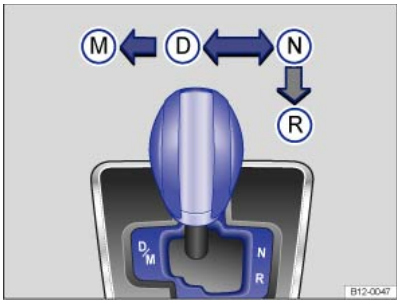


Fig. 98 Gear shift pattern for the automated manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

To move the selector lever out of position **N** to position **D** or **R**, first depress and hold the brake pedal.

The current gearbox position or the selected gear will be shown in the instrument cluster display if the ignition is switched on.

Selector lever position	Designation	Meaning ⇒⚠
R	**Reverse gear**	Reverse gear is selected. May only be selected when the vehicle is *stationary.*
N	**Neutral**	The gearbox is in the neutral position. No force is transmitted to the wheels and the braking effect of the engine is not available.
D	**Standard forward driving position**	All forward gears are shifted up and down automatically. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.
M	**Tiptronic position for forward travel** (manual shift programme)	All forward gears can be shifted up and down manually ⇒ *Changing gear with Tiptronic*. This remains the case until the system does not perform or prevents a gear change due to the current driving situation.

⚠ WARNING

Engaging an incorrect selector lever position can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never depress the accelerator pedal when selecting a position.**
- **When the engine is running and a position has been selected, the vehicle starts moving as soon as the accelerator is depressed.**
- **Never select the reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.**

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- **The driver must never leave the driver seat when the engine is running and a position has been selected. If you have to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, always firmly apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to position N.**
- **Never select position R when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never leave the vehicle if the handbrake is not on. While the is engine running the vehicle will roll downhill, irrespective of the position selected.**

If the lever is moved accidentally to **N** when driving, take your foot off the accelerator. Wait for the engine revs in the neutral position before selecting a position again.

Changing gear with Tiptronic

Fig. 99 Selector lever in Tiptronic position

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

With Tiptronic the gears in an automated manual gearbox can be shifted up and down manually. The gear that is currently selected will be maintained when the Tiptronic programme is selected. This remains the case until the system does not perform a gear change due to the current driving situation.

Operating Tiptronic

- From position **D** push the selector lever left into the Tiptronic gate **M**⇒⚠.
- Gently push the selector lever forwards ⊕ or back ⊖ to shift gear up or down ⇒ *Fig. 99*.
- Push the selector lever to the left again in the Tiptronic gate **M** to exit Tiptronic mode ⇒⚠.

In selector lever position **D**, push the lever towards the ⊕ or the ⊖ to switch briefly into the Tiptronic programme **M**.

NOTICE

- **When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.**
- **When shifting down a gear manually, the gearbox will not change gear until the engine can no longer be overrevved.**

Driving with an automated manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

Driving down hills

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never allow the vehicle to roll down mountains or hills in the neutral position **N**.

- Reduce your speed.
- Push the selector lever in position **D** to the left into the Tiptronic gate **M**⇒ *Changing gear with Tiptronic*.
- Gently push the selector lever back ⊖ to change down gear.

Stopping the vehicle and pulling away when driving uphill

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear that is required.

If you wish to stop the vehicle or pull away when driving uphill, you should use the Hill Hold Assist function ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*. Pulling the handbrake switches the Hill Hold Assist off.

Vehicles without Hill Hold Assist: When you stop the vehicle on an incline and a position is still selected, the vehicle must always be prevented from rolling by depressing the brake pedal or by applying the handbrake. The brake pedal or the handbrake should not be released until you start to pull away ⇒.

Kick-down

The kickdown function enables maximum acceleration in the selector lever position **D** or in the Tiptronic position **M**.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, the gearbox will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed and engine revs. This will make use of the full vehicle acceleration ⇒⚠.

The gearbox does not shift up to the next gear until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always adjust your driving style in accordance with the flow of traffic.**
- **The kickdown function or fast acceleration should only be used if the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.**
- **You should never endanger other road users through the acceleration of your vehicle or through your driving style.**

NOTICE

If you stop the vehicle on an incline, do not attempt to stop it from rolling back by depressing the accelerator while a position is still selected. The automated manual gearbox could overheat and be damaged.

Fault in the automated manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Emergency programme

There may be a fault in the system if warning and indicator lamps for the automated manual gearbox light up in the vehicle cluster ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamp*. When certain faults occur, the automated manual gearbox runs in an emergency programme. The vehicle can still be driven in the emergency programme, but only at reduced speed and not in all gears.

With an automated manual gearbox it may then be the case that the vehicle can **no longer be driven in all gears**.

In all cases the automated manual gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop immediately.

Overheating in the automated manual gearbox

The automated manual gearbox can overheat, for example if the vehicle regularly pulls off from the starting position or in stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by a warning lamp displayed in the instrument cluster. An acoustic warning may also be heard. Stop the vehicle and allow the gearbox to cool down ⇒.

The vehicle does not move forwards or backwards even though a position has been selected

If the vehicle will not move in the required direction, the system may have selected the position incorrectly. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the position.

If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system fault. Seek expert assistance and have the system checked.

NOTICE

- **If the display indicates that the gearbox is overheating for the first time, the vehicle will have to be parked safely or driven faster than 20 km/h (12 mph).**
- **If the lamp signal and acoustic warning are repeated approximately every 10 seconds, the vehicle must immediately be parked safely and the engine switched off. Allow the gearbox to cool down.**
- **In order to prevent damage to the gearbox, you should not drive on until the lamp goes out. You should not pull away or drive the vehicle at very low speeds while the gearbox is overheated.**

Gear-change indicator (manual gearbox)

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

In some vehicles, the instrument cluster will show which gear should be selected while the vehicle is in motion to reduce fuel consumption.

Display	Meaning
●	The current gear is optimal.
↑	A higher gear is recommended.
↓	A lower gear is recommended.

CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is only designed to assist the driver and cannot replace the driver's own judgement.

- **The driver has full responsibility for selecting the correct gear in all situations, e.g. when overtaking or when driving up and down hills.**

Driving in the correct gear can reduce fuel consumption.

The display on the gear-change indicator will disappear when the clutch pedal is depressed.

In some vehicles the gear recommendation may be displayed on the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.

Braking, stopping and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
⇒ *Handbrake*
⇒ *Parking*
⇒ *Information on the brakes*
⇒ *Brake assist systems*
⇒ *Brake fluid*

The **brake assist systems** are the electronic brake pressure distribution system (EBV), anti-lock brake system (ABS), the brake assist system (BAS), the electronic differential lock (EDS), traction control (TC), the traction control system (TCS) and the electronic stabilisation programme (ESC).

Additional information and warnings:

- Pull-away assist systems ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If you have reason to believe that the brakes are worn down or the brake system is faulty, go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the brake system checked and have any worn brake pads replaced.

WARNING

Incorrect parking can cause serious injuries.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer or control the vehicle.
- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.
- Always apply the handbrake fully when the vehicle is parked.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could release the handbrake, move the selector lever or gearshift lever and thus set the vehicle in motion. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The engine can still be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls still can be operated, potentially causing serious injury.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.

NOTICE

- To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first apply the handbrake firmly and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- Always take care when driving in car parks with protruding kerbstones or bollards. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle. In order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels touch the bollards or kerbs.
- Drive carefully through dips in the road, over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

Warning and indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause ⇒	Solution
(P)	Handbrake is applied.	⇒ *Handbrake*.
	Brake system fault.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance immediately ⇒ *Fault in the brake system*.
(!)	Brake fluid level is too low.	**Do not drive on!** Check brake fluid level ⇒ *Brake fluid level*.
	In conjunction with ABS indicator lamp (ABS): ABS and EDV not functioning.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance immediately ⇒ *Fault in the brake system*.
	ESC switched off by the system.	Switch the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive a short distance.
	ESC fault.	Proceed to a qualified workshop.
	In conjunction with ABS indicator lamp (ABS): ABS fault.	Proceed to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Vehicle battery has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (10 – 12 mph). If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
TC	Traction Control fault or switched off for system-related reasons.	Go to qualified workshop ⇒ *Traction Control System (TCS) or Traction Control (TC)*.
ESC	In conjunction with ESC indicator lamp : ABS fault.	Proceed to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

Lit up	Possible cause ⇒	Solution
	In conjunction with warning lamp (!): ABS and EBV not functioning.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance immediately ⇒ *Fault in the brake system*.
	Brake pedal not depressed.	To select a position, press the brake pedal.

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	ESC/TCS is taking corrective action.	Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Adapt driving style to suit road conditions.
	Traction Control active.	Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Adapt driving style to suit road conditions ⇒ *Traction Control System (TCS) or Traction Control (TC)*.
	Flashing: vehicle with an automated manual gearbox is not secured from rolling away.	Apply the handbrake.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**

WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- **If the brake warning lamp (!) does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle immediately and seek expert assistance ⇒ *Brake fluid*.**
- **If the brake warning lamp (!) lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp (ABS), the control function of the ABS may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. Locked rear wheels can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop in order to have the brake system tested. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres on the way.**
- **The ABS is not functioning correctly if the ABS indicator lamp (ABS) does not go out or comes on while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only (without ABS). The protection provided by ABS is no longer available. Proceed to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Handbrake

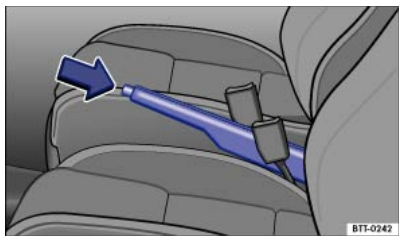


Fig. 100 Handbrake between the front seats

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Applying the handbrake

- Pull the handbrake lever up firmly with the locking button ⇒ *Fig. 100* (arrow) pressed.
- The handbrake is applied when the indicator lamp (P) lights up in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*.

Releasing the handbrake

- Lift the handbrake lever up slightly and press the lock button ⇒ *Fig. 100* (arrow).
- Guide the handbrake lever down whilst the lock button is pressed.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the handbrake can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **The handbrake should never be used to brake the vehicle, except in emergencies. The braking distance is considerably longer as only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.**
- **Never drive the vehicle with the handbrake lightly applied. This can overheat the brakes and adversely affect the brake system. It can also cause premature wear to the rear brake pads.**
- **Never activate the accelerator from the engine compartment if a position or gear has been selected and the engine is running. The vehicle can start to move even if the handbrake is applied.**

NOTICE

To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first apply the handbrake firmly and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.

An acoustic warning is given if the car is driven faster than approximately 6 km/h (4 mph) with the handbrake applied.

Parking

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Please adhere to relevant legislation when stopping and parking your vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

The steps should only be carried out in the specified order.

- Stop the vehicle on a suitable surface ⇒.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
- Apply the handbrake firmly ⇒ *Handbrake*.
- With an automated manual gearbox, move the selector lever to position **D** or **R**.
- Switch off the engine and take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
- Turn the steering wheel slightly if necessary to engage the steering lock mechanism.
- With a manual gearbox, select first gear for flat ground and uphill inclines, or reverse gear for downhill inclines, and then release the clutch.
- Please ensure that all occupants, in particular children, leave the vehicle.
- Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

Additional points for ascending and descending inclines

Before switching off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels will roll against the kerb if the parked vehicle starts to move.

- When facing downhill, turn the wheels so that they face the kerb.
- When facing uphill, turn the wheels so that they face the centre of the road.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- **Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.**

NOTICE

- **To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first apply the handbrake firmly and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.**
- **Always take care when driving in car parks with protruding kerbstones or bollards. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle. In order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels touch the bollards or kerbs.**
- **Drive carefully through dips in the road, over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.**

Information on the brakes

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 200 to 300 km and must first be run in ⇒. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. **During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking** than with brakes that have been fully run in. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations that create a heavy load on the brakes should be avoided. For example, when driving too close to the vehicle ahead.

The **rate of wear** of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way in which the vehicle is driven. With regular urban trips, short journeys and a sporty driving style, the brake pads must be checked by a qualified workshop more regularly than stated in the service schedule.

When driving with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly iced up (in winter). The brakes must be dried as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speed. Please ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action ⇒.

Any **layer of salt accumulated on the discs and pads** will delay the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the brakes on the vehicle have not been applied for a long time on roads that have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking ⇒.

Corrosion on the brake discs and **dirt** in the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. If the brake pads have been hardly used, or if they are at all corroded, Volkswagen recommends that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by braking strongly several times from high speed. Please ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action ⇒.

Fault in the brake system

A brake circuit may have failed if you have to reduce speed and the vehicle does not brake as normal (sudden increase in braking distance). This is indicated by the warning light . Go to the nearest qualified workshop immediately to have the fault corrected. Drive at low speed when doing this and anticipate much longer braking distances and an increase in the pressure required on the pedal.

Brake servo

The brake servo will only function when the engine is running and reinforces the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal.

If the brake servo is not functioning or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system ⇒.

WARNING

New brake pads will not have the optimal braking effect when first fitted.

- New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 320 km and must first be run in. A reduced braking effect can be increased by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.
- You must drive particularly carefully when driving with new brake pads in order to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries and loss of control of the vehicle.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles when running in new brake pads, and never create a driving situation that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

WARNING

Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance.

- When driving downhill the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react more slowly and require longer braking distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off any coating of ice and salt with a few cautious applications of the brake when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

WARNING

Driving without the brake servo can considerably increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.
- If the brake servo does not function or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system.

NOTICE

- Never let the brakes rub by applying light pressure to the brake when it is not necessary to brake. Continual pressure on the brake pedal will overheat the brakes. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brakes could otherwise overheat and possibly fail. The brakes should only be used to slow or stop the vehicle.

If the front brake pads are tested, the rear brake pads should be tested at the same time. Regularly check the thickness of the brake pads through the openings in the rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Brake assist systems

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The brake assist systems ESC, ABS, EBV, BAS, TCS, TC and EDL will only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve driving stability by braking individual wheels in certain driving situations. The ESC detects critical driving situations such as oversteer, understeer and wheelspin. The system supports the stabilisation process for the vehicle by targeted braking or by reducing engine torque.

ESC has its limitations. It is important to realise that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. ESC will not be able to assist in every situation faced by a driver. For example, ESC will not be able

to assist every time that there is a sudden change in the road surface quality. If a section of dry road is suddenly covered with water, mud or snow, ESC will not be able to assist in the same manner as on a dry road. If the vehicle aquaplanes (drives on a layer of water rather than on the road surface), ESC will not be able to assist in steering the vehicle as the contact to the road surface has been interrupted and it is therefore no longer possible to steer or brake the vehicle.

Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. ESC cannot defy the laws of motion, improve the available power output, or keep the vehicle on the road if insufficient care and attention on the part of the driver causes the vehicle to leave the road. Instead, ESC increases the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and, in extreme on-road driving situations, it assesses the driver's steering input and helps the vehicle to continue in the required direction. If the vehicle is driving at a speed that leads it to leave the road before the ESC can provide any kind of support, the ESC will be unable to provide any assistance.

The ABS, BAS, TCS and EDL systems are integrated into the ESC. The ESC is always on.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied up until the point where the vehicle is nearly stationary and assists the driver in steering the vehicle and keeping it under control. This means that the vehicle is less likely to spin, even when the brakes are depressed fully:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal with force. Do not take your foot off the brake pedal or reduce the force on the brake pedal!
- Do not pump the brake pedal or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal!
- Steer the vehicle while the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

If the ABS is taking corrective action, there is a **pulsing movement in the brake pedal** and some noise. However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer when braking on gravel or on fresh snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

Electronic brake pressure distribution system (EBD)

Every vehicle's centre of gravity moves forwards whenever the brake is operated. This means that the rear wheels are in danger of locking due to the lower traction. The electronic brake pressure distribution system controls the brake pressure for the rear wheels and thereby ensures the optimum distribution of brake pressure between the front and rear axles. Under normal conditions, the system will prevent the rear from breaking away if too much brake pressure if applied to the rear wheels. The electronic brake pressure distribution system is included in the ABS' scope of functions.

Brake Assist system (BAS)

The brake assist system can help to reduce the braking distance. The brake assist system reinforces brake pressure hydraulically when the driver depresses the brake pedal quickly in an emergency situation. As a result, full braking power is made accessible very quickly, brake pressure is increased and the braking distance reduced. In this way, the ABS is activated more quickly and more effectively.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The brake assist system will switch off the hydraulic brake servo automatically when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

Traction Control System (TCS) or Traction Control (TC)

The TCS or TC reduces the engine output if wheelspin occurs and adapts the output to suit road surface conditions. TCS or TC helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb gradients in unfavourable road conditions.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL is available for normal driving on straight roads. EDL brakes the wheel that has lost traction and distributes the driving force to the other drive wheel. To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

WARNING

Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and could cause serious injury to the driver and passengers.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the brake assist systems ABS, BAS, EDL, TCS, TC and ESC tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**
- **The brake assist systems cannot defy the laws of motion. Slippery and wet roads will remain dangerous, even when the ESC and other systems are active.**
- **Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road surface and aquaplane. A vehicle cannot be braked, steered or controlled once it has lost contact with the road surface.**
- **Brake assist systems cannot prevent an accident if, for example, you are driving too close to the vehicle in front or are driving too fast for the individual situation.**
- **Although the brake assist systems are very effective and can help to control the vehicle in difficult driving situations, please always remember that the driving stability of the vehicle depends on the tyre grip.**
- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. The wheels can spin even with active brake assist systems and this can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.**

WARNING

ESC will be considerably less effective if other components and systems that affect driving dynamics are not serviced correctly or are not functioning properly. This also applies, but not exclusively, to the brakes, tyres and other systems that have already been named.

- **Please always note that modifications and changes to the vehicle can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, TCS, TC, EDL and ESC.**
- **Alterations to the suspension system or the use of non-approved wheel and tyre combinations can affect the function of ABS, BAS, TCS, TC, EDL and ESC and reduce their effectiveness.**
- **Suitable tyres are also crucial if ESC is to function optimally** ⇒ ***Wheels and tyres***.

The ESC or the TCS/TC can only function properly if all four wheels have the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power unexpectedly.

If the ABS fails, the ESC, TCS, TC and EDL will also cease to function.

Control processes running in the systems described may cause operating noises.

Brake fluid

Fig. 101 In the engine compartment: cap on the brake fluid container

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users depends on having a brake system that functions properly at all times ⇒⚠.

Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed a brake fluid that has been optimised for the brake system in the vehicle. To ensure optimal operation of the brake system, Volkswagen recommends the use of brake fluid compliant with **VW standard 501 14**.

Before using a particular brake fluid, check that the specifications printed on the container correspond to the vehicle requirements.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 is available from Volkswagen dealerships.

If this brake fluid is not available and it is necessary to use another high-quality brake fluid instead, brake fluid that is compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 can be used.

Not all brake fluids that are compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids may contain chemicals that can damage or destroy brake system components over time.

Volkswagen therefore recommends the use of brake fluid that is compliant with **VW standard 501 14** to ensure sustained optimal operation of the brake system.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 fulfils the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX marking on the brake fluid container or above the MIN marking ⇒⚠.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models as engine components may partially conceal the brake fluid container. If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, please proceed to a qualified workshop.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid must be changed as indicated in the service schedule ⇒Booklet*Service schedule*,. The brake fluid should be changed by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be used.

⚠ WARNING

Brake failure or reduced braking effect can be caused by the brake fluid level being too low or by brake fluid that is too old or unsuitable.

- **The brake system and brake fluid level must be checked regularly.**
- **The brake fluid should be changed regularly, according to the service schedule ⇒Booklet*Service schedule*,.**
- **Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can cause the brake system to fail completely.**
- **Please ensure that the correct brake fluid is used. Only use brake fluid that is explicitly compliant with VW standard 501 14.**
- **Any other brake fluid or a low-quality one can affect the functioning of the brakes and reduce their effectiveness.**
- **If a brake fluid compliant with VW standard 501 14 is not available, use a high-quality brake fluid compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4, but only in exceptional circumstances.**
- **The refilled brake fluid must be new.**

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic.

- **In order to reduce the risk of poisoning, never use bottles or other containers to store brake fluid. These containers could encourage other people to drink out of them, even if they are labelled otherwise.**
- **Brake fluid must always be stored in its original sealed container and kept out of the reach of children.**

NOTICE

Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilt can damage the vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tyres. Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilt should be cleaned off the vehicle paintwork and other components immediately.

Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

Driving with respect for the environment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *An economic driving style*
⇒ *Driving in a fuel-efficient manner*

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on three factors:

- Personal driving style.
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface).
- Technical conditions.

Depending on your personal driving style, a few simple measures can help save fuel by up to 25%.

WARNING

Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

An economic driving style

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Changing gear earlier

In principle, the highest gear is always the most economical gear. A rule of thumb for most vehicles: at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) drive in 3rd gear, at 40 km/h (25 mph) in 4th gear and at 50 km/h (31 mph) in 5th gear.

If the traffic and driving situation allows it, skipping gears when changing up a gear will also save fuel.

Do not drive gears to their upper limit. Use first gear only for pulling away then quickly change up to second gear. Avoid using the kickdown function in vehicles with an automated manual gearbox.

Vehicles with a gear display help to improve fuel economy by indicating the optimum time to change gear.

Rolling to a stop

Taking your foot off the accelerator will interrupt the supply of fuel to the engine and decrease fuel consumption.

Therefore, in situations such as approaching a red traffic light, let the vehicle roll without applying the accelerator. Only press on the clutch pedal to disengage if the vehicle becomes too slow or if the stopping distance is longer. The engine will then run at idling speed.

Switch off the engine in situations when the vehicle might be stationary for a long time, e.g. at a level crossing. In vehicles with an active start/stop system, the engine will switch off automatically when the vehicle is stationary.

Thinking ahead when driving, and driving with the flow of traffic

Applying the brake and accelerator too often will significantly increase fuel consumption. By thinking ahead when driving and by maintaining a sufficient distance from the vehicle in front, simply keeping your foot off the accelerator will stop the speed from fluctuating. This means that active braking and accelerating is not always necessary.

Driving smoothly and evenly

Even more important than speed is smoothness: the more evenly you drive, the lower your fuel consumption will be.

When driving on a motorway, it is much more effective to drive at a constant moderate speed than to drive with constant acceleration and braking. As a rule, driving with a constant style will get you to your destination just as quickly.

The cruise control system will help you to maintain a constant driving style.

Using additional equipment in moderation

It is always important to be comfortable in your vehicle, but it is also important to consider the environment.

Some equipment will increase fuel consumption when switched on:

- The cooling function of the air conditioning system: if the air conditioning system is set to a very high or low temperature it will require a lot of energy, which is generated by the engine. Therefore the temperature setting in the vehicle should not vary too much from the outside temperature. It may be a good idea to air the vehicle before setting off and then to travel a short distance with the windows open. The air conditioning system should then be switched on once the windows have been closed.
- Keep the windows closed when driving at high speeds. Having the windows open increases fuel consumption.
- Switch the seat heating off as soon as it has served its purpose.
- Switch the rear window heating off as soon as the window has defogged and is clear of ice.

Other factors that increase fuel consumption (examples):

- Fault in engine management.
- Driving in hilly regions.

Driving in a fuel-efficient manner

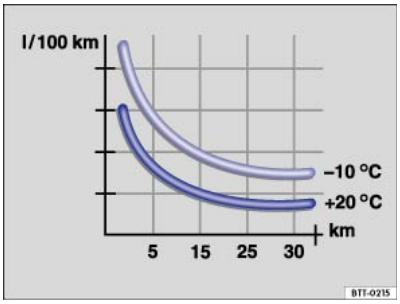


Fig. 102 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different outside temperatures

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15 %.

Cars use most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red.

Avoid short journeys

Directly after a cold start, the engine has a very high fuel consumption. The engine reaches its working temperature after a few kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions. The **outside temperature** is a key factor.

The different rates of fuel consumption for the same distance at both +20°C (+68°F) and at -10°C (+14°F) are shown in ⇒ *Fig. 102*.

Therefore, avoid making too many short journeys and car share whenever possible.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle will use more fuel in winter than in summer.

Not only is it illegal in some countries to warm up the cold engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary, it is also technically unnecessary and a waste of fuel.

Adjust the tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure reduces rolling resistance and therefore also fuel consumption.

Ensure that any new tyres purchased have optimum rolling resistance.

Using low viscosity engine oils

Fully synthetic low viscosity engine oils reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts. They are especially effective in vehicles that make a lot of short journeys.

Always ensure that the engine oil level is correct and that you keep to the service intervals (oil change intervals).

When buying engine oil, always ensure that it complies with engine oil norms and has been approved by Volkswagen.

Avoid unnecessary loads

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and environmentally-friendly it is. An extra weight of 100 kg can increase fuel consumption by up to 0.3 l/100 km.

Remove all unnecessary objects and loads from the vehicle.

Remove any unnecessary special equipment and accessories

The more aerodynamic a vehicle, the lower its fuel consumption. Special equipment and accessories, such as roof carriers or bicycle carriers, make the vehicle less aerodynamic.

You should therefore remove any special equipment and luggage carriers that are not in use, especially if you are going to be driving at high speeds.

Steering

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*

⇒ *Information on steering*

Depending on its equipment level the vehicle may have power steering.

The power steering is not hydraulic. It is an electromechanical system. The advantage of this steering system is that no hydraulic hoses, hydraulic oil, pumps, filter or other parts are required. The electromechanical system reduces fuel consumption. A hydraulic system requires constant oil pressure in the system, whereas an electromechanical steering system only needs an energy supply while steering.

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running.

Additional information and warnings:

- Starting and stopping the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- Battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*
- Tow-starting and towing ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*

WARNING

If the power steering is not working, the steering wheel is difficult to turn, which makes it difficult to steer the vehicle.

- **The power steering only functions when the engine is running.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.**
- **Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.**

Warning and indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	The electromechanical steering is faulty or not working.	The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Electromechanical steering function reduced.	The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. If the yellow warning lamp remains off after the ignition has been restarted and you have driven a short distance, you **do not** need to consult a qualified workshop.
	The vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (9 – 12 mph).

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out soon afterwards.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Information on steering

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The steering should be locked every time you leave the vehicle to make it more difficult for the vehicle to be stolen.

Mechanical steering column lock

The steering column is locked if the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock when the vehicle is stationary.

Activating the steering lock	Deactivating the steering lock
Park the vehicle ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*.	Insert the vehicle key into the ignition lock.
Remove the vehicle key.	Turn the steering wheel slightly to take the load off the steering lock mechanism.
Turn the steering wheel slightly until the steering lock clicks into place.	Hold the steering wheel in this position and turn the ignition on.

Electromechanical steering

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running.

You will need considerably more strength than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

Driver assist systems

Pull-away assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Indicator lamps*
⇒ *Start/stop system*
⇒ *Hill Hold Assist*

Additional information and warnings:

- Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Starting the engine with jump leads ⇒ *Starting the engine with jump leads*

WARNING

The intelligent technology of the pull-away assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics. Never let the extra convenience afforded by pull-away assist systems tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

- **Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.**
- **The pull-away assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.**
- **Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **A pull-away assist system cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations or brake it sufficiently on all slopes going downhill (e.g. if the ground is slippery or icy).**

Indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
Ⓐ	The start/stop system is not available. Automatic engine stop active.	
	The start/stop system is available, but an automatic engine stop is not possible.	Check whether all technical requirements have been fulfilled. If not, remedy any shortfalls ⇒ *Start/stop system*.
	Start/stop system cannot start the engine.	Start the engine again manually using the vehicle key ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.
	Fault in the alternator.	⇒ *Vehicle battery*

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
Ⓐ	Start/stop system not available.	Proceed to a qualified workshop.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Start/stop system

Fig. 103 In the upper part of the centre console: button for the start/stop system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

When the start/stop system is active, the engine is switched off whenever the vehicle is stationary. The engine then restarts automatically as soon as it is required.

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on. The instrument cluster display shows information about the current status ⇒ *Indicator lamps*.

Always switch off the start/stop system manually when driving through water.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

- When the vehicle is stationary, disengage the gear and release the clutch pedal. The engine is stopped.

- Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Important preconditions for automatic engine switch-off

- The driver is wearing their seat belt.
- The driver door is closed.
- The bonnet is closed.
- A minimum engine temperature has been reached.
- The vehicle has been moved since the engine was last switched off.
- The defrost function of the air conditioning system is not switched on.
- The charging state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The temperature of the vehicle battery is not too low or too high.
- The vehicle is not on a steep incline.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.

Conditions for an automatic restart

The engine can start automatically under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle rolls on.
- If the voltage of the vehicle battery falls.

Conditions that make a key start necessary

The engine has to be started manually with the vehicle key in the following conditions:

- If the driver unfastens their seat belt.
- If the driver door is opened.
- If the bonnet is opened.

Switching the start/stop system on and off

- Press the (A) OFF button in the centre console ⇒ *Fig. 103*.
- If start/stop system has been deactivated, the indicator lamp in the button lights up.

If the start/stop system has switched the engine off, the engine will start again as soon as the system has been switched off manually with the (A) OFF button.

WARNING

The brake servo and the electromechanical steering will not function if the engine is switched off.

- **Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.**
- **The start/stop system must be switched off if work is to be carried out in the engine compartment.**

NOTICE

If the start/stop system is used in very high outside temperatures over a long period, the vehicle battery can be damaged.

In some cases, it will be necessary to restart the engine manually with the vehicle key. Take note of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument cluster.

Hill Hold Assist

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*

The Hill Hold Assist function actively holds the vehicle when pulling away on an incline.

The Hill Hold Assist function is automatically activated if the following conditions are met

Points 1 to 3 must be fulfilled at the same time:

	Manual gearbox	Automated manual gearbox
1.	On an incline, the **stationary** vehicle must be held in position with the footbrake until the vehicle starts moving.	
2.	The engine is running smoothly.	
3.	Fully depress the clutch pedal and move the gear stick to the **1st gear** position if you want to drive forwards up a hill or to the **R** position if you want to reverse up a hill.	Position **D** is selected when driving forwards up an incline or position **R** is selected for driving in reverse up an incline.

Points 1 to 3 must be fulfilled at the same time:

	Manual gearbox	Automated manual gearbox
	In order to start moving, remove your foot from the brake pedal, then release the clutch pedal (clutch engages) and press the accelerator simultaneously. **The brake will gradually be released as the clutch is engaged.**	To start moving, remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the accelerator immediately. **The brake will gradually be released as the vehicle pulls away.**

The Hill Hold Assist function will be deactivated immediately:

- As soon as one of the conditions indicated on ⇒ *The Hill Hold Assist function is automatically activated if the following conditions are met* is not fulfilled.
- If the engine is not running smoothly or there is an engine fault.
- If the engine is switched off or has stalled.
- *Vehicles with automated manual gearbox:* if the selector lever in is the neutral position **N**.

ParkPilot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Operating ParkPilot*
⇒ *Acoustic and optical ParkPilot signals at the rear of the vehicle*

The ParkPilot assists the driver when manoeuvring and parking.

The ultrasound sensors in the rear bumper transmit and receive ultrasonic waves. The system uses the time difference between the ultrasonic waves (i.e. between the transmission and reflection from obstacles and the point of reception) to continuously calculate the distance between the bumper and the obstacle.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Radio ⇒Booklet*Radio*,

WARNING

The ParkPilot cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- **Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.**
- **Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people cannot be detected.**
- **Always monitor the area around the vehicle as the ultrasound sensors will not always detect infants, animals and objects.**
- **Certain surfaces of objects and clothes cannot reflect the signals from the ultrasound sensors. The system is unable to detect these objects or people wearing this type of clothing, or they may be detected incorrectly.**
- **External sources of sound can affect the signals of the ultrasound sensors. In certain circumstances, the system may not recognise people or objects.**

NOTICE

- **The ultrasound sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening tailgates. This can result in damage to your vehicle.**
- **If the ParkPilot has detected an obstacle and issued a warning, the obstacle may move out of the detection range of the ultrasound sensors as the vehicle approaches it, particularly if the object is very high or very low. These objects are no longer registered.**
- **The vehicle can sustain considerable damage if the warning given by the ParkPilot is ignored.**
- **The ultrasound sensors in the bumper can be displaced or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking.**
- **The ultrasound sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.**
- **The ultrasound sensors should only be sprayed briefly when cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners. A distance of more than 10 cm between the ultrasound sensors and the steam/hose nozzle must be observed.**
- **Sources of noise can lead to errors in the ParkPilot system, e.g. rough asphalt, cobblestones, induction loops, building equipment, or interference from other vehicles.**
- **Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle, e.g. bicycle carriers, can prevent the ParkPilot from functioning properly.**

Please contact a qualified workshop if there is a fault in the system. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends that drivers practise using the ParkPilot in a traffic-calmed area or car park to allow them to familiarise themselves with the system and its functions.

Operating ParkPilot

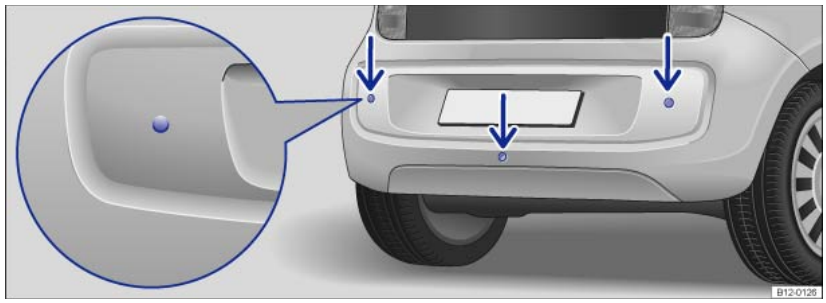


Fig. 104 Ultrasound ParkPilot sensors in the rear bumper

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The ParkPilot uses ultraound sensors to determine the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle. There are 3 ultrasound sensors in the rear bumper ⇒ *Fig. 104* (arrows).

Switching ParkPilot on and off

Function	What to do when the ignition is switched on
Switching on the ParkPilot automatically:	Select reverse gear or move the selector lever to position **R**.

Function	What to do when the ignition is switched on
Switching the display off manually	If applicable, press the portable navigation unit screen (delivered by Volkswagen)
Switching off the ParkPilot automatically:	After shifting out of reverse gear.

Things to note about ParkPilot

- In some cases, the ParkPilot registers water and ice on the ultrasound sensors as an obstacle.
- The acoustic signal will become quieter after a few seconds if the distance remains the same. The volume will remain constant if the acoustic warning is continuous.
- As soon as the vehicle moves away from the obstacle again, the intermittent acoustic warning is switched off automatically. If the vehicle approaches the obstacle again, the acoustic warning is switched on automatically.
- A Volkswagen dealership can adjust the volume of the acoustic signals.

If there is a function fault in the ParkPilot, an acoustic warning is emitted for approximately 3 seconds when switched on for the first time. The ParkPilot should be immediately checked by a qualified workshop.

Acoustic and optical ParkPilot signals at the rear of the vehicle

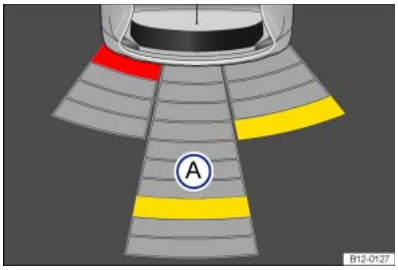


Fig. 105 ParkPilot screen display on portable navigation unit (delivered by Volkswagen)

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Key

⇒ Fig. 105	Meaning
Ⓐ	Scanned area behind the vehicle.
■	Yellow segment depicts an obstacle.
■	Red segment depicts an obstacle located close to the vehicle.

Depending on equipment level the areas to the rear of the vehicle that are scanned by the ultrasound sensors are shown in the display of the portable navigation system (delivered by Volkswagen). The positions of potential obstacles are displayed relative to the vehicle ⇒⚠.

Acoustic signals and screen

Acoustic signals are given when the vehicle approaches an obstacle located to the rear. An intermittent acoustic warning is given if there is sufficient distance between the vehicle and an obstacle. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals. The acoustic warning will sound continuously if the obstacle is very close.

If you continue to drive the vehicle closer to the obstacle despite the continuous acoustic warning, the system will no longer be able to measure the distance.

Depending on the vehilcle equipment level, the scanned areas are displayed as several segments in a display *⇒ Fig. 105*. The closer the vehicle drives towards an obstacle, the closer the segment will move to the vehicle in the display. The collision area has been reached when the penultimate segment is displayed, if not before. **Do not drive on!**

Area of the vehicle		Distance of the vehicle from an obstacle	Acoustic signal	segment colour when obstacle is detected
Ⓐ	Rear centre Rear side	approx. **31 – 150 cm** approx. **31 – 60 cm**	Intermittent tone	Yellow
	Obstacle close to the vehicle	approx. **0 – 30 cm**	Constant tone	Red

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.

It can take a few seconds for the acoustic or optical signals to be emitted.

Further information on the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) can be found in the user's manual for the device ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.

Cruise control system (CCS)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Indicator lamp*

⇒ *Using the cruise control system (CCS)*

The cruise control system (CCS) helps to maintain a specific preset speed during forward travel at approx. 20 km/h (15 mph) and higher.

The CCS only slows the vehicle by easing off the accelerator, not by actively braking ⇒⚠.

Additional information and warnings:

- Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

⚠ WARNING

The use of the cruise control system can lead to accidents and serious injuries if traffic does not allow you to drive at a safe distance from the vehicle in front at a constant speed.

- **Never use the CCS in heavy traffic, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads, loose chippings, or on flooded roads.**
- **Never use the CCS when driving off-road or on unsurfaced roads.**
- **Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Always switch cruise control off after use to avoid unintentional operation.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed that is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.**
- **The CCS cannot maintain a constant speed when travelling downhill. The vehicle speed can increase under its own weight. Shift down a gear or brake the vehicle using the foot brake.**

Indicator lamp

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause
	Cruise control system (CCS) is controlling the speed.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Using the cruise control system (CCS)

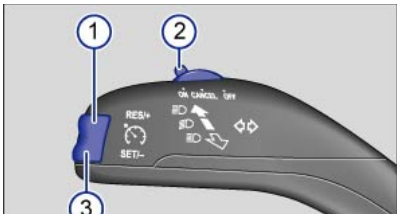


Fig. 106 Turn signal and main beam lever on the left of the steering column: button and switch for the CCS

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Function	Switch position, switch control *⇒ Fig. 106*	Action
Switching on the CCS.	Switch ② in position **ON**.	The system is switched on. No speed has yet been stored and the speed is not yet being controlled.
Activating the CCS.	Press button ③ **SET/-**.	The current speed is stored and controlled.
Switching off the CCS control temporarily.	Switch ② in position **CANCEL** **OR:** depress the brake or clutch pedal.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.
Resuming CCS control.	Press button ① **RES/+**.	The stored speed is reactivated and controlled.
Increasing the set speed (during CCS control).	Press button ① **RES/+** *briefly* to increase the speed in small steps of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to save.	The vehicle accelerates actively until it reaches the new set speed.
	Press and hold down button ① **RES/+** *continuously* to continuously increase the speed; the increased speed setting will be saved when you release the button.	
Decreasing the set speed (during CCS control).	Press button ③ **SET/-** *briefly* to reduce the stored speed in small steps of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to save.	The system will decrease the speed until the new set speed is reached by easing off the accelerator *without* actively braking.
	Press and *hold* button ③ **SET/-** to decrease the speed continuously. The new speed setting will be saved when you release the button.	
Switching off the CCS.	Switch ② in position **OFF**.	The system is switched off. The set speed will be deleted.

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

Driving downhill with CCS

If the CCS cannot maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the foot brake and shift down gear if necessary.

Automatic switch-off

The CCS control will be switched off automatically or switched off temporarily:

- If the system detects a fault that could impair the function of the CCS.
- If the vehicle speed is higher than the stored speed for an extended period with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- If the brake pedal or clutch pedal is depressed.
- If you change gear on a manual gearbox.
- If the airbag is triggered.

City emergency brake function

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ Warning and indicator lamps

⇒ Laser sensor

⇒ Switching city emergency brake function on and off

⇒ Special driving situations

Within the speed range of approximately 5 – 30 km/h (3 – 19 mph), the city emergency brake function monitors the traffic situation up to a distance of about 10 m in front of the vehicle.

The system prepares the vehicle for emergency braking if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle ahead ⇒⚠.

If the driver does not react to a possible collision, the system can brake the vehicle automatically in order to reduce the speed ahead of a possible collision.

If, in a potential collision scenario, the city emergency brake function detects that the driver is applying the brakes with insufficient pressure, the system can increase the brake pressure in order to reduce speed ahead of the collision. Hence the system can help minimise the consequences of an accident.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Lower section of the centre console ⇒ *Overview of the centre console*
- Instrument cluster ⇒ *Instrument cluster*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

The intelligent technology of the city emergency brake function cannot change the laws of physics or the system-related vehicle limitations. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the city emergency brake function tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The driver is always responsible for braking in time.

- **The city emergency brake function cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries by itself.**
- **The city emergency brake function can carry out unwanted brake interventions in certain complex situations, e.g. if a vehicle cuts very closely in front of you.**

WARNING

Incorporating the city emergency brake function into your own driving style can cause accidents and serious injuries. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- **Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The city emergency brake function does not react to persons, animals and vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.**
- **Brake the vehicle by depressing the brake if the vehicle rolls forwards once the city emergency brake function has been applied.**

NOTICE

Switch off the city emergency brake function if you suspect that the laser sensor has been damaged. This can help to prevent further damage.

- **Repairs to the laser sensor require specialist knowledge. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.**

The brake pedal travel decreases when the city emergency brake function is triggered. This may make the brake pedal feel stiffer.

Automatic brake intervention by the city emergency brake function can be stopped by using the clutch, the accelerator or steering intervention.

Unusual noises may be heard if the city emergency brake function is applying an automatic braking procedure. This is normal and the noises are caused by the braking system.

Warning and indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The city emergency brake function is switched on every time the ignition is switched on. No display will be shown to alert you of this.

The indicator lamp will be lit up if the city emergency brake function is switched off, is working or if there is a fault in the system.

Lit up	Possible cause ⇒⚠	Solution
ON	The city emergency brake function was switched on using the button OFF ⇒ *Fig. 109*.	The indicator lamp is switched off automatically after approximately 5 seconds.
Flashes	**Possible cause ⇒⚠**	**Solution**
	Quickly: city emergency brake function is braking automatically or has braked automatically.	Indicator lamp will go out automatically.
	Slowly: city emergency brake function currently not available.	While the vehicle is stationary, switch off the engine and re-start it again. If necessary, inspect the laser sensor (for

Flashes	Possible cause ⇒⚠	Solution
		soiling, ice, roof load protruding over the front) ⇒⚠. Proceed to a qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked if it is constantly unavailable.
OFF	*When travelling between 5 – 30 km/h (3 – 19 mph):* the city emergency brake function was switched off using the button OFF ⇒ *Fig. 109*.	Switch on the city emergency brake function using the button OFF ⇒ *Fig. 109*.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Laser sensor

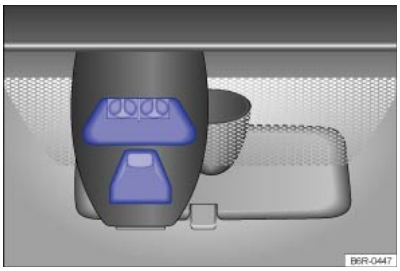


Fig. 107 On the windscreen: laser sensor for the city emergency brake function

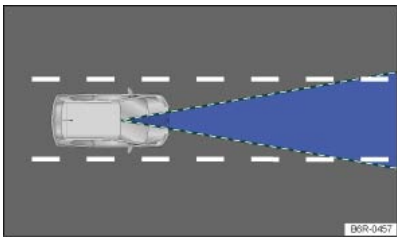


Fig. 108 Detection range of the laser sensor

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The system monitors the traffic in front of the vehicle using a laser sensor in the windscreen ⇒ *Fig. 107*.

Vehicles travelling ahead can thus be recognised up to a distance of approximately 10 m.

WARNING

The beam from the laser sensor could cause severe damage to the eyes.

- **Never use optical devices, such as a rangefinder camera, microscope or magnifying glass, to look into the laser sensor from a distance of less than 100 mm.**
- **Please be aware that the laser beam may still be active even if the city emergency brake function is switched off or unavailable. The laser beam is not visible to the human eye!**

NOTICE

The city emergency brake function may not work if the area on the windscreen around the laser sensor is iced over, dirty or covered, for example from rain, spray or snow or by roof loads protruding over the front of the vehicle.

- **Always keep the area around the laser sensor free from dirt and ice and do not cover it.**
- **Remove snow with a brush, and remove ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray.**

NOTICE

The city emergency brake function may fail to work if the windscreen is damaged in the area around the laser sensor.

- **Have the windscreen replaced if it is scratched, cracked or chipped in the area around the laser sensor. Only use windscreens that have been approved by Volkswagen. Do not simply have the windscreen repaired (for example, if it has been damaged by stone chipping).**
- **When changing the windscreen wiper blades only use wiper blades that are the same production quality as the factory-fitted wiper blades.**
- **Do not paint the windscreen in the area around the laser sensor or cover the area with stickers, deposits or similar.**

Switching city emergency brake function on and off

Fig. 109 In lower part of centre console: button for the city emergency brake function

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Switching the city emergency brake function on and off

- Press the *⇒ Fig. 109* button in the centre console.

When the city emergency brake function is switched off, the indicator lamp OFF lights up when the vehicle is travelling at 5 – 30 km/h (3 – 19 mph).

Switch off the city emergency brake function in the following situations

The city emergency brake function should be switched off in the following situations ⇒:

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If you are driving the vehicle through an automatic car wash.
- If the vehicle is on a rolling road test bed.
- If the laser sensor is faulty.
- If the laser sensor has been hit or moved with force.
- If the vehicle is being driven off-road (e.g. through low-hanging branches).
- If there are protruding objects in the area above the bonnet, e.g. a load on the roof that sticks out at the front.
- If the windscreen is damaged in the area around the laser sensor.
- Driving with tailgate open.
- In the event of multiple unwanted interventions.

WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries could occur if you do not switch off the city emergency brake function during any of the situations named above.

- **Switch off the city emergency brake function during critical driving situations.**

Special driving situations

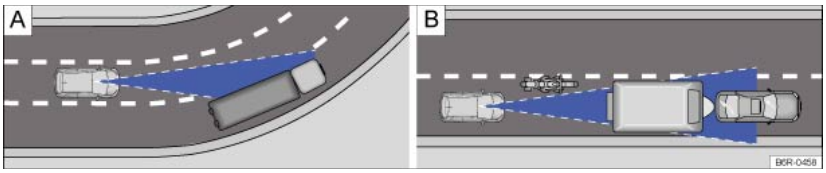


Fig. 110 A: vehicle in a bend B: motorbike in front is outside the range of the laser sensor

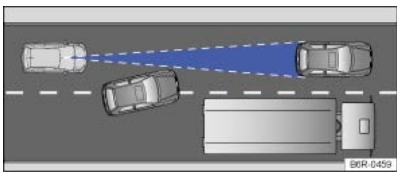


Fig. 111 Vehicles changing lanes

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The city emergency brake function has physical and system-specific limits. In certain situations, the driver may therefore feel that the city emergency brake function reacts too late or unexpectedly. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

The following driving situations demand particular vigilance:

When driving through bends

When driving into or out of a long bend, the laser sensor may react to a vehicle in the adjacent lane ⇒ *Fig. 110***A** and thus brake the vehicle. The braking effect can be stopped by pressing the accelerator or clutch pedal or by steering the vehicle.

Narrow vehicles and a zig-zag traffic situation

Narrow vehicles and vehicles travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle will only be recognised by the laser sensor once they have entered the range of the sensor ⇒ *Fig. 110***B**. This particularly applies to narrow vehicles such as motorcycles.

When other vehicles change lanes

Vehicles that are very close to you when they move into your lane could cause the city emergency brake function to be applied unexpectedly ⇒ *Fig. 111*. The braking effect can be stopped by pressing the accelerator or clutch pedal or by steering the vehicle.

Possible laser sensor function impairments

The city emergency brake function will switch off temporarily if the function of the laser sensor is impaired due to heavy rain, spray, snow or mud, for example. The indicator lamp will flash in the instrument cluster display.

The city emergency brake function is ready to work again as soon as the laser sensor returns to normal function. The indicator lamp goes out.

The following conditions could prevent the city emergency brake function from reacting:

- If ESC is active.
- In tight bends.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- When you drive faster than 30 km/h for a few seconds.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If the city emergency brake function is switched off or if there is a fault in the system ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*.
- If the laser sensor is dirty, covered or overheated ⇒ *Laser sensor*.
- In snow, heavy rain or thick fog.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.

- If vehicles are travelling towards you in the same lane.
- If the surrounding vehicles are very dirty and therefore not very reflective.
- If there is a lot of dust.

Air conditioning system

Heating, ventilating, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Controls*
⇒ *General information on the heating and fresh air system*
⇒ *Information on the air conditioning system*
⇒ *Vents*
⇒ *Air recirculation mode*

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter reduces the level of impurities in the outside air entering the vehicle.

The dust and pollen filter must be changed regularly to avoid impairing the performance of the air conditioning system.

The dust and pollen filter must be changed more frequently than stated in the service schedule if the efficiency of the filter declines prematurely due to the vehicle being used in areas with high levels of air pollution.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*
- Windscreen wiper/washer ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*

WARNING

Poor visibility through all windows increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can cause serious injuries.

- **Always ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and mist to ensure good visibility.**
- **Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature. Do not start your journey until you have good visibility.**
- **Always ensure that the heating and fresh air system or the air conditioning system and the heated rear window are used correctly in order to have good visibility.**
- **Never use the air recirculation mode for an extended period. If the cooling system is switched off, the windows can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.**
- **Always switch off the air recirculation mode when it is not required.**

WARNING

Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never switch off the blowers or switch on the air recirculation mode for an extended period as this prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle interior.**

NOTICE

- **Switch off the air conditioning system if you suspect that it has been damaged. This can help to prevent further damage. The air conditioning system should be checked by a qualified workshop.**
- **Repairs to the air conditioning system require specialist knowledge and special tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.**

If the cooling system is switched off, the outside air that is drawn into the vehicle is not dehumidified. To prevent the windows misting over, Volkswagen recommends that you leave the air conditioning (compressor) switched on. Press the A/C button. The indicator lamp in the button must light up.

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling is not impaired, and to prevent the windows from misting over.

Controls

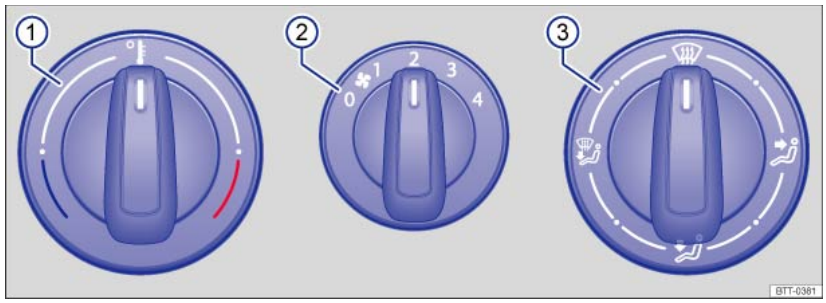


Fig. 112 In the centre console: rotary controls for the heating and fresh air system

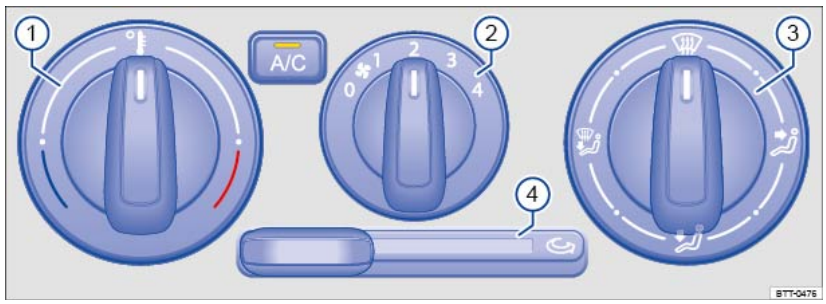


Fig. 113 In the centre console: air conditioning controls

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Button, control	Additional information. Heating and fresh air system ⇒ *Fig. 112* and air conditioning system ⇒ *Fig. 113*.
Temperature ①. ■ ... ■	Turn the regulator to set the temperature as required.
Blowers ②.	Setting 0: blower and system switched off, setting 4: highest blower setting.
Air distribution ③.	Turn the control to direct the airflow exactly as required.
④	**Air conditioning system**: slider for the air recirculation mode ⇒ *Air recirculation mode*.
	Heating and fresh air system: defrost function. Air distribution to the windscreen and the side windows around the exterior mirrors.
	Air conditioning system: defrost function. Air distribution to the windscreen and the side windows around the exterior mirrors. press the A/C button, increase the blower level and switch the air recirculation mode ⇒ *Air recirculation mode* off, in order to remove condensation from the windscreen as quickly as possible.
	Air distribution to the upper body via the air vents in the dash panel.
	Air distribution to the footwell.
	Heating and fresh air system, air conditioning system: air distribution to the windscreen and in the footwell.
A/C	**Air conditioning system**: Press the button to switch the cooling system on or off.

Rear window heating

The button for the rear window heating is located in the centre console. The rear window heating only functions when the engine is running and will switch off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

⚠ WARNING

Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never switch off the blowers or switch on the air recirculation mode for an extended period as this prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle interior.**

General information on the heating and fresh air system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The required interior temperature cannot be lower than the outside temperature as the heating and fresh air system cannot cool or dehumidify the air.

Settings for optimal road visibility

- Set blower ⇒ *Fig. 112@* to level 1 or 2.
- Open and position all vents on the dash panel ⇒ *Vents*.
- Turn the air distribution controller ⇒ *Fig. 112@* to the defrost position.

Information on the air conditioning system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The cooling system for the vehicle interior only works when the engine is running and the blower is switched on.

The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows and the electric panorama sliding and tilting glass roof closed. However, if the vehicle has heated up after standing in the sun for some time, the air inside can be cooled more quickly by opening the windows and the electric panorama sliding and tilting glass roof for a short time.

Settings for optimal road visibility

Switching the cooling system on not only reduces the temperature of the vehicle interior, but also the humidity. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents the windows from misting when the outside humidity is high.

- Switch off air recirculation mode ⇒ *Air recirculation mode*.
- Set the blowers to the required level.
- Open and position all vents on the dash panel ⇒ *Vents*.
- Turn the air distribution controller to the defrost position.
- Press the A/C button to switch the cooling system on. The indicator lamp in the button lights up.

The cooling system cannot be switched on

The following criteria may prevent the cooling system from being switched on:

- The engine is not running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The air conditioning system fuse has blown.
- The ambient temperature is lower than approximately +2°C (+36°F).
- The compressor has been temporarily switched off because the coolant temperature is too high.
- There is a different fault in the vehicle. The air conditioning system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

Things to note

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

The windscreen may mist up after starting the engine due to residual humidity in the air conditioning system. Switch the defrost function on in order to clear the windscreen of condensation or mist as quickly as possible.

Vents

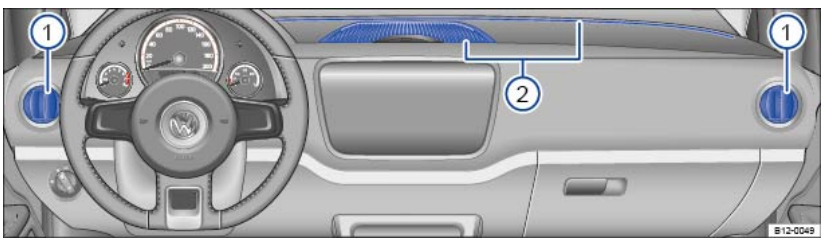


Fig. 114 In the dash panel: vents

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Vents

The vents ⇒ *Fig. 114①* should be left open to ensure that the vehicle interior is sufficiently heated, ventilated and cooled.

- Press the vent ① to open it.
- Turn the panels to adjust the direction of the airflow.
- To ensure the best possible airflow to the side windows, open the individual air vent and turn to the defrost position in which the air vent engages.
- To close the vents, push the panels backs.

Additional vents can be found in the middle of the instrument panel ⇒ *Fig. 114②*, in the footwells and in the rear area of the vehicle interior.

NOTICE

Do not place any food, medicine or any other heat-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless.

Air recirculation mode

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

General notes

The air recirculation mode prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

If the outside temperature is very high, the manual air recirculation mode should be activated for a short time in order to cool the vehicle interior more quickly.

- If the air distribution control is set to , switch off the air recirculation mode ⇒⚠.

Switching the air recirculation mode on and off

Switching on: push the slider ⇒ *Fig. 113④* all the way to the right.

Switching off: push the slider ⇒ *Fig. 113④* all the way to the left.

WARNING

Stale air can quickly cause tiredness and lack of concentration in the driver, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never use the air recirculation mode for an extended period as no fresh air will enter the vehicle interior.**
- **If the cooling system is switched off, the windows can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.**
- **Always switch off the air recirculation mode when it is not required.**

NOTICE

Do not smoke if the air recirculation mode has been selected. The smoke drawn into the cooling system can leave a residue on the evaporator and the dust and pollen filter, producing a permanent unpleasant odour.

At the filling station

Filling the tank

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Indicator lamps and fuel gauge*
⇒ *Filling the tank with petrol*
⇒ *Filling the tank with natural gas*
⇒ *Capacities*
⇒ *Checks when filling the tank*

The fuel cap is located at the rear right-hand side of the vehicle.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Fuel ⇒ *Fuel*

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*

WARNING

Filling the tank incorrectly and incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire and serious burns and injuries.

- **Always ensure that the tank cap is properly closed, to prevent the evaporation and spillage of fuel.**
- **Fuel is highly explosive and inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.**
- **Fuel can spill out if the engine is not switched off or the filler nozzle is not fully inserted into the fuel filler neck when filling the tank. This can cause fires, explosions and serious burns and injuries.**
- **When filling the tank with fuel, the engine and the ignition must be switched off for safety reasons.**
- **When filling the tank, always switch off your mobile telephone and two-way radio or any other radio equipment. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks which can in turn start a fire.**
- **Never get back into the vehicle while filling the tank. If in exceptional cases you have to enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal object before touching the filler nozzle again. This will remove any electrostatic charge from you. Failure to do so could generate a spark. Sparks can cause a fire when filling the tank.**
- **Never fill the tank or fill up a spare canister near open flames, sparks or glowing matter (e.g. cigarettes).**
- **Electrostatic discharge and electromagnetic radiation must be avoided when filling the tank.**
- **Follow all applicable safety information provided by the filling station when filling the tank.**
- **Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.**

WARNING

For safety reasons, Volkswagen does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel can spill out of the full or empty canister and catch fire, especially in the event of an accident. This could cause explosions, fire and injuries.

- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to transport a spare fuel canister, please note the following:**

  - When refilling never place the canister in or on top of the vehicle, for example in the luggage compartment. There may be an electrostatic charge during refilling causing the fuel fumes to ignite.

  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground.

  - When filling a spare fuel canister, place the filler nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening.

  - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must have constant contact with the canister in order to avoid static charging.

  - Please follow all legislation concerning the use, stowage and transport of a spare fuel canister.

  - Ensure that the spare fuel canister is accordance with the industry standard, such as ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

NOTICE

- **Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the wheel housing, tyres and vehicle paint.**
- **Filling the tank with diesel in a vehicle with a petrol engine can cause serious and expensive engine damage and cause damage to the fuel system that is not covered by any Volkswagen guarantee. Do not start the engine under any circumstances if you have refilled using the incorrect fuel. Seek expert assistance. The substances in these fuels can cause serious damage to the fuel system and to the engine itself if it is switched on.**

Fuels can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

Indicator lamps and fuel gauge

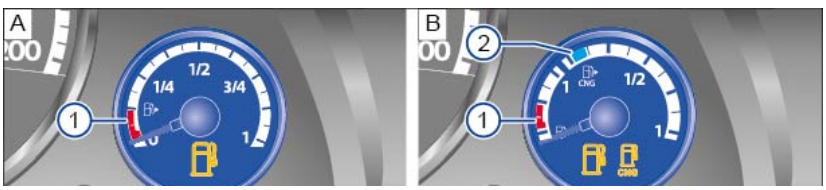


Fig. 115 In the instrument cluster: variant A: fuel gauge for petrol, variant B: fuel gauge for petrol

Fig. 116 In the instrument cluster display: fuel gauge for petrol

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The fuel gauge can vary according to the vehicle equipment level ⇒ *Fig. 115* or ⇒ *Fig. 116*.

Lit up [a]	Needle position ⇒ *Fig. 115*	Possible cause ⇒⚠	Solution
	Red marking ①	Fuel tank nearly empty. Reserve quantity is being used ⇒ *Capacities*.	Fill the tank with petrol as soon as possible ⇒ (!).
	Blue marking ②	Natural gas fuel tank nearly empty. Reserve quantity is being used.	Refuel with natural gas as soon as possible ⇒ (!).

Flashes for approximately 10 seconds [b]	Position of the bar ⇒ *Fig. 116*	Possible cause ⇒⚠	Solution
	Reserve fuel marking flashes for approximately 10 seconds (four small segments)	Fuel tank nearly empty. Reserve quantity is being used ⇒ *Capacities*.	Fill the tank as soon as possible ⇒(!).

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

Natural gas engines

Things to note: if the vehicle is parked for an extended period directly after refuelling, it may well occur that the pointer for the natural gas engine does not indicate the fuel level shown directly after refuelling. This does not mean that there is a leak in the system but but rather that, for technical reasons the pressure has been decreased in the natural gas tank.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the vehicle when the fuel level is too low could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- **When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.**
- **The steering, all driver assist systems and brake assist systems will not function if the engine sputters or stops completely due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.**
- **Always fill the tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.**

(!) *NOTICE*

- **To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.**
- **Do not run the tank empty. Irregular filling periods can cause backfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system. This could cause damage to the catalytic converter!**

The small arrow next to the petrol pump symbol ⇒ *Fig. 115* in the display instrument shows you the side of the vehicle on which the tank flap is located.

[a] Only applies for vehicles with a fuel gauge in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Fig. 115*.

[b] Only applies for vehicles with a fuel gauge in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Fig. 116*.

Filling the tank with petrol

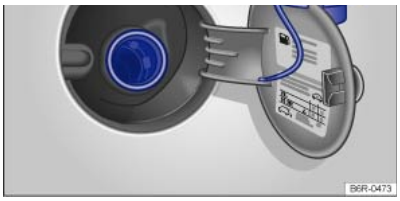


Fig. 117 Open tank flap with tank cap attached to the holder

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Switch off the engine, ignition and the mobile telephone **before** filling the tank and leave them switched off during the process.

Opening the tank cap

- The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.
- Open the tank cap by the moulding to the rear.
- If necessary, fold the key bit out of the vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the vehicle key in the tank flap lock and turn anticlockwise.
- Turn the tank cap anticlockwise and hook it on top of the tank flap ⇒ *Fig. 117*.

Filling the tank

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap ⇒ *Fuel*.

- The fuel tank is *full* when the (properly operated) automatic filler nozzle clicks off for the first time ⇒⚠.
- Do not continue filling the tank after it switches off. The expansion space in the fuel tank will otherwise fill up and the fuel could spill out. This could also happen when the fuel warms up and expands.

Closing the tank cap

- Turn the tank cap clockwise into the fuel filler neck until it perceptibly engages.
- Turn the vehicle key in the lock cylinder of the tank flap clockwise and pull it out.
- Close the tank flap. The tank flap must be flush with the vehicle bodywork.

Natural gas engines

Run the petrol tank empty every 6 months until the indicator lamp lights up. This is necessary to maintain necessary system function for petrol mode and fuel quality.

⚠ WARNING

Do not continue filling the tank once the filler nozzle stops automatically. The fuel tank could be overfilled. This can cause fuel to splash out and overflow. This can cause fires, explosions and serious injuries.

NOTICE

Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the wheel housing, tyres and vehicle paint.

Fuels can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

Filling the tank with natural gas

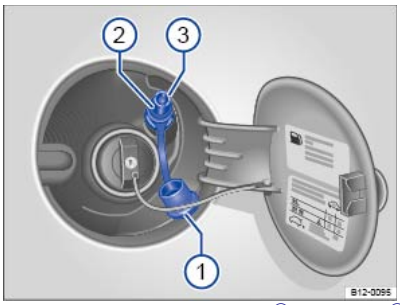


Fig. 118 With the tank flap open: tank cap ①, gas filler neck ②, gas filler neck seal ③

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Switch off the engine, ignition and the mobile telephone **before** filling the tank and leave them switched off during the process ⇒⚠.

Please read and follow the instructions for the natural gas refuelling system.

The vehicle is not constructed for use with Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) ⇒⚠. Before refilling with natural gas check that you are using the correct fuel ⇒ *Fuel*.

Opening the tank cap

The gas filler neck is located under the tank flap next to the petrol filler neck.

- The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.
- Open the tank cap by the moulding to the rear.

Filling the tank

At very high ambient temperatures, the overheating protection function for the natural gas refuelling system could switch off automatically.

- Remove the cap ⇒ *Fig. 118①* from the gas filler neck ②.
- Place the filler coupling for the refuelling system on the gas filler neck. Please refer to natural gas refuelling system operating manual.
- The fuel tank is *full* when the compressor for the refuelling system switches off automatically.
- To end the refuelling procedure press the stop button on the refuelling system.

Closing the tank cap

- Check whether seal ⇒ *Fig. 118③* on the gas filler neck has slipped onto the filler coupling. Place the seal back in the gas filler neck as necessary.
- Push the cap ① onto the gas filler neck.
- Close the tank flap. The tank flap must be flush with the vehicle bodywork.

⚠ WARNING

Natural gas is highly explosive and inflammable. Failure to refuel properly with natural gas could result in accidents, serious burns and other injuries.

- **Lock the fuel filler nozzle correctly before refuelling natural gas. Stop refuelling immediately if you start to smell gas.**

⚠ WARNING

Your vehicle is not suitable for use with Liquefied Natural Gas and must not be filled up or driven with Liquefied Natural Gas. Liquefied Natural Gas can cause an explosion in the natural gas tank and serious injuries as a consequence.

The filling couplings for the natural gas refuelling systems can be of various different designs. Please ask for assistance from trained personnel if you are unsure of how to use the system.

Noises which you may hear while refuelling are normal and do not indicate that the system is malfunctioning.

The natural gas system in your vehicle is suitable for use with small compressors (slow fill) and large compressors (fast fill).

Capacities

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

	Fuel tank capacity
Petrol engines	approx 35.0 l, of which 4.0 l reserve.
Natural gas engine	Natural gas: approx. 11.0 kg of which reserve approx. 1.5 kg. Petrol: approx. 10.0 l of which reserve approx. 5.0 l

Checks when filling the tank

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Checklist

Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements or if the correct operating

equipment, service fluids and unsuitable tools are not available ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*! The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Please ensure that the following are checked regularly, preferably every time you fill the tank:

- ✓ Windscreen washer fluid level Windscreen wiper and washer
- ✓ Engine oil level Engine oil
- ✓ Engine coolant level Coolant
- ✓ Brake fluid level Braking, stopping and parking
- ✓ Tyre pressure Wheels and tyres

Vehicle lighting necessary for traffic safety:

- Turn signals
- Side lights, dipped beam headlights and main beam headlights
- Tail light cluster
- Brake lights
- Rear fog light ⇒ *Lights*

Information on changing bulbs ⇒ *Changing bulbs*.

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Petrol*
⇒ *Natural gas*

Different engines require different fuels. The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the fuel type that is required for your particular vehicle.

Volkswagen recommends using low-sulphur or sulphur-free fuels, to help reduce fuel consumption and prevent damage to the engine.

If the engine is not running smoothly or begins to judder, this can indicate poor or inadequate fuel quality, e.g. water in the fuel. If these symptoms appear, reduce the vehicle speed immediately and drive to the nearest qualified workshop at medium engine speeds, avoiding high engine loading. If these symptoms occur immediately after the vehicle has been refuelled, switch the engine off as soon as it is safe to do so and seek expert assistance. This can help to prevent further damage.

Additional information and warnings:

- ⇒Booklet *Service schedule*,
- Filling the tank ⇒ *Filling the tank*
- Engine management and exhaust system ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system*

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire and serious burns and injuries.

- **Fuel is highly explosive and inflammable.**
- **Never handle fuel near open flames, sparks or glowing matter (e.g. cigarettes).**
- **Keep naked flames, hot parts and sparks at a safe distance.**
- **Switch off your mobile telephone or two-way radio when dealing with fuel. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks which can in turn start a fire.**
- **Avoid electrostatic discharge and electromagnetic radiation in the direct vicinity of fuels.**
- **Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.**
- **Comply with any relevant safety information and legislation concerning the handling of fuels.**

Petrol

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Petrol types

Vehicles with a petrol engine must be run on unleaded petrol in compliance with the European standard EN 228 or DIN 51626-1 ⇒(!). Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10% (E10) can be used for refuelling.

Petrol types are categorised according to their octane number, e.g. 91, 95, 98 or 99 RON (RON = Research Octane Number). The vehicle may be filled with petrol that has a higher octane number

than the engine requires. However, this does not provide any advantage in terms of fuel consumption or engine output.

Volkswagen recommends using fuel with a low sulphur content or sulphur-free fuel for petrol engines in order to achieve reduced fuel consumption.

Petrol additives

The quality of petrol influences the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. This is why the vehicle should be refuelled with good quality petrol that has only non-metallic additives pre-added by the petroleum industry. These petrol additives help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean, and prevent the build-up of deposits in the engine.

If good quality petrol containing non-metallic additives is not available, or if engine problems arise, the necessary petrol additives must be added to the petrol when refuelling ⇒.

Not all petrol additives are effective. The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Metallic additives should be avoided at all times.

Petrol additives on sale that are intended to improve knock resistance or increase the octane number can also contain metallic additives ⇒.

Volkswagen recommends genuine Volkswagen or Audi fuel additives for petrol engines. These additives and information on how to use them are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

Natural gas engines

Run the petrol tank empty every 6 months until the indicator lamp lights up. This is necessary to maintain the required system function for petrol mode and fuel quality.

NOTICE

- **Before filling up with petrol, check whether the fuel corresponds to the vehicle's requirements according to the fuel standard information at the pump.**
- **Only use fuel that complies with EN 228 or DIN 51626-1 and has the correct octane number. Otherwise, the engine and the fuel system can suffer considerable damage. The engine can also lose power or fail.**
- **The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter.**
- **If, in an emergency, you have to use petrol with an octane number lower than the recommended number, drive at medium engine speeds and avoid high engine loading. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads. Failure to do so can result in engine damage. Fill the tank with petrol with the correct octane number as soon as possible.**
- **Fuels that are identified at the fuel pump as containing metallic additives may not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Risk of engine damage!**
- **Just one tankful of leaded fuel, or fuel containing other metallic additives, can seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter and can also cause considerable damage to the catalytic converter and engine.**

Natural gas

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Natural gas

Natural gas can be delivered in compressed or liquefied form.

Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) is produced by rapid cooling of the natural gas. This decreases the volume considerably in comparison to Compressed Natural Gas (CNG). A vehicle equipped with a natural gas engine may not be refilled directly with liquefied natural gas as the gas would expand too much once in the tank in the vehicle.

Vehicles fitted with a natural gas engine may therefore only be refilled and driven using compressed natural gas ⇒.

Natural gas quality and consumption

Natural gas is available in two grades: H-gas and L-gas.

H-gas has a higher calorific value and a lower nitrogen and carbon dioxide content. The higher the calorific value of the natural gas the lower the levels of consumption.

The calorific value and the nitrogen or carbon dioxide values may, however, vary within one quality group. For this reason, the vehicle consumption may vary when using natural gas of the same quality.

The vehicle engine management will automatically adapt to the different natural gas qualities. Both natural gas qualities can therefore be mixed in the fuel tank. You do not need to empty the tank before refuelling with a different grade.

Natural gas

The vehicle can run on natural gas. Further information is available from your local Volkswagen dealership.

Safe handling of natural gas

If you can smell gas or think there may be a leak in the natural gas system ⇒⚠:

- Stop the vehicle immediately.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Open all the doors to fully ventilate the vehicle.
- Extinguish cigarettes immediately.
- Remove items that could cause sparks or fire from the vehicle or switch them off.
- Do not drive on if you can still smell gas.
- Seek expert assistance. Have the fault rectified.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the smell of gas in the vehicle or when refuelling can cause serious injuries.

- **Take any necessary action.**
- **Leave the area of risk.**
- **Contact the emergency services if necessary.**

⚠ WARNING

Your vehicle is not suitable for use with Liquefied Natural Gas and must not be filled up or driven with Liquefied Natural Gas. Liquefied Natural Gas can cause an explosion in the natural gas tank and serious injuries as a consequence.

ⓘ Have the natural gas system checked regularly according to the service schedule by a qualified workshop.

Cleaning and maintenance

In the engine compartment

Preparation for working in the engine compartment

🕮 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment*
⇒ *Opening and closing the bonnet*

Always park the vehicle on a level and stable surface before carrying out any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a motor vehicle is a hazardous area. Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the requisite procedures and general safety requirements, or if you only have access to incorrect operating equipment, service fluids, and unsuitable tools ⇒⚠. The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Windscreen wiper/washer ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*
- Starting and stopping the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- Brake fluid ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Checks when filling the tank ⇒ *Filling the tank*
- Engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*
- Engine coolant ⇒ *Coolant*
- Battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements during service work can cause serious injury.

- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not secured against rolling away. If you are working underneath the vehicle while the wheels are on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level, the wheels must be blocked and the vehicle key must be removed from the ignition lock.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this task and can fail, which can lead to serious injuries.
- The start/stop system must have been deactivated.

WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.

- The utmost care and attention must be paid when carrying out any work and you must follow the general safety rules. Never take any risks.
- Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry it out. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop. Serious injuries can result from work that has not been carried out properly.
- Never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the engine compartment.
- Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the bonnet.
- Hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can burn the skin.
- Before opening the bonnet once it has cooled down:
  - Apply the handbrake fully and move the selector lever to position N or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.
  - Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and injuries.
  - After cooling, turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting some downwards pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids can start a fire.

WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, burns, serious injuries and death!

- Never short circuit the electric system. The vehicle battery could explode.
- Please note the following guidelines to help reduce the risk of an electric shock and serious injuries while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.

WARNING

There are rotating components in the engine compartment that can cause serious injury.

- Never place your hand near or directly in the radiator fan. Touching the rotary blades can result in serious injuries. The fan is temperature-controlled and can start automatically, even if the engine has been switched off and the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition lock.
- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always be particularly careful.
  - Always ensure that no body parts, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can be caught up in rotating engine components. Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull clothes in tightly to avoid them getting caught in the engine compartment.
  - Always depress the accelerator carefully and never without due consideration. The vehicle can start to move even if the handbrake is applied.
- Always ensure that you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment. Any forgotten items can cause malfunctions, engine damage and fires.

WARNING

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are highly flammable and can cause fires and serious injuries!

- Never smoke while working on the vehicle.
- Never work near naked flames or sparks.
- Never spill fluids onto the engine. They could ignite on hot engine components and hence cause injuries.
- Please note the following when carrying out any work on the fuel system or the electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the vehicle battery.
  - Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other open flames.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.

NOTICE

When refilling or changing operating fluids please ensure that the fluids are in the correct container. Incorrect operating fluids can cause serious functional problems and engine damage.

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. So you should regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If there are spots of oil or other fluids on the ground, the vehicle should be inspected by a qualified workshop. Any spilt service fluids must be disposed of properly.

Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Checklist

The following steps should always be carried out in the specified order before working in the engine compartment ⇒:

- ✓ Park the vehicle on a level and stable surface.
- ✓ Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
- ✓ Apply the handbrake firmly Braking, stopping and parking.
- ✓ Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to N Changing gear.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Allow the engine to cool sufficiently.
- ✓ Children and other people should be kept well away from the engine compartment.
- ✓ Ensure that the vehicle cannot roll away unexpectedly.

WARNING

Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

- **Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to severe injuries.**

Opening and closing the bonnet

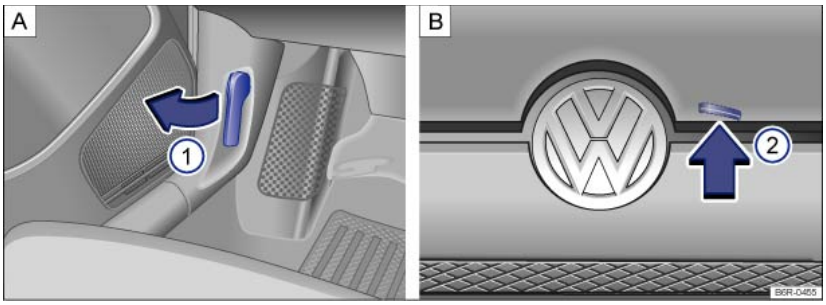


Fig. 119 A: release lever in the footwell on the driver side B: release lever on the bonnet

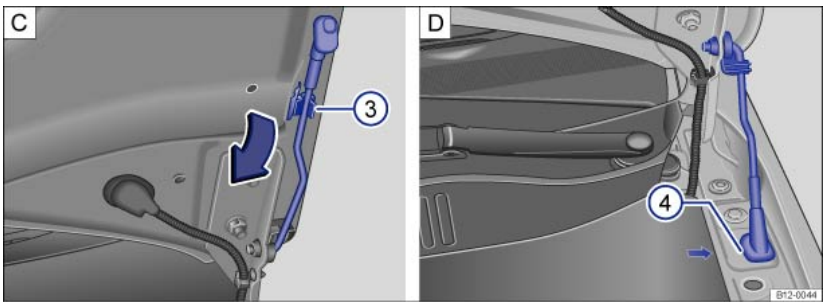


Fig. 120 C: release lever at the bonnet stay D: bonnet secured with the bonnet stay

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Opening the bonnet

- Ensure that the windscreen wiper arms are positioned on the windscreen before opening the bonnet ⇒.
- Pull the release lever ① in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 119* **A**. The bonnet is released from its lock by a spring mechanism ⇒.
- Lift the bonnet slightly and at the same time push the release lever ② **B** in the direction of the arrow to open the bonnet completely.
- Take the bonnet stay out of the holder ③ **C** on the bonnet and insert it in opening ④ **D** (arrow).

Closing the bonnet

- Lift the bonnet slightly ⇒.
- Take the bonnet stay out of the holder ④ **D** and insert it in the opening in the bonnet ③ **C**.
- Let the bonnet drop into the catches from a height of approximately 20 cm – *do not* press it down!

If the bonnet is not closed, open it again and close it properly.

The bonnet sits flush with the body parts around it when it is properly closed.

WARNING

If the bonnet is not properly closed, it could open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.**
- **If you notice that the bonnet is not properly closed while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and close the bonnet.**
- **Therefore the bonnet should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its path.**

NOTICE

The bonnet should only be opened when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen in order to avoid damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
⇒ *Engine oil specification*
⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil*
⇒ *Engine oil consumption*
⇒ *Changing engine oil*

Additional information and warnings:

- ⇒Booklet *Service schedule*,
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Incorrect handling of engine oil can cause serious burns and injuries.

- **Always wear eye protection when handling engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.**
- **Engine oil must be kept in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of.**
- **Never use empty food containers, bottles or other containers to store engine oil as other people may then drink the engine oil.**
- **Regular contact with engine oil can damage the skin. Skin that has been in contact with engine oil should be washed thoroughly with water and soap.**
- **Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can scald skin severely. Always allow the engine to cool down.**

Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

Warning and indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Engine oil pressure is too low.	**Do not drive on!** Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level.⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil* – Do *not* drive on or remain at idling speed if the warning lamp is flashing, even if the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Engine oil specification

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The engine oil used must correspond exactly to specifications.

The correct engine oil is important for the function and service life of the engine. A special high quality multigrade oil has been filled at the factory and this can normally be used as an all-season oil.

If possible, only use Volkswagen-approved engine oil ⇒(!). The engine oils listed are **multigrade high-lubricity oils**.

Engine oils are constantly being developed and improved. A Volkswagen dealership is always kept up to date on innovations. Volkswagen therefore recommends having engine oil changes done by a Volkswagen dealership.

The quality of the engine oil is not only tailored to the requirements of engines and exhaust gas treatment systems, but also to fuel quality. Due to the way in which a combustion engine works, engine oil always comes into contact with combustion residues and fuel, which has a knock-on effect on the ageing process of the oil.

The quality of fuels can vary greatly between individual markets and this must be taken into account when selecting the correct engine oil.

The use of engine oils compliant with the VW 504 00 requires a fuel quality compliant with EN 228 (petrol) or fuel of and equivalent quality. **Engine oils compliant with VW 504 00 are therefore unsuitable for use in a large number of markets.**

	Permitted engine oil specifications ⇒(!)	*Alternative engine oil specifications*⇒(!)
Engine type	**Fixed service QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4, QI7 (based on time/distance travelled)**	***Only in the EU, Switzerland, Norway, Japan and Australia*** [a]
Petrol engines	VW 502 00	VW 504 00
Natural gas engine	VW 502 00	-----

(!) *NOTICE*

- **Do not add any additional lubricants to the engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives is not covered by the warranty.**
- **Only engine oil specifications that have been approved for use with the engine should be used. Using other engine oils can cause engine damage.**
- **Another engine oil can be used in the event of an emergency if the listed engine oils () are not available. To avoid damaging the engine, a maximum quantity of 0.5 litres of the following engine oil may be used only once until the next oil change:**
  - Petrol engines: standards ACEAA3/B4 or API SN (API SM).

[a] Alternative engine oil specifications may only be used in fixed services QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4 and QI7, and only when fuel of a quality compliant with EN 228 (petrol), or fuel of an equivalent quality, is available in the particular country.

Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil

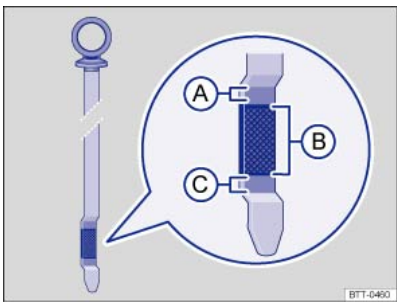


Fig. 121 Oil dipstick with markings

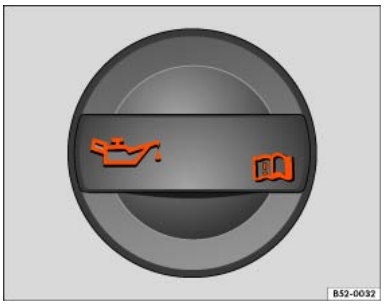


Fig. 122 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒(!)

Introduction

Checklist

Carry out the steps in the specified order ⇒⚠:

- ✓ With the engine at operating temperature, park the vehicle on a level surface to ensure that the engine oil reading is correct.
- ✓ Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
- ✓ Open the bonnet .
- ✓ Identify the engine oil filler cap and oil dipstick. The engine oil filler opening bears the symbol on the cap and the oil dipstick has a coloured handle. If you cannot find the cap and dipstick please contact a qualified workshop.
- ✓ Pull the dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe it off with a clean cloth.
- ✓ Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube again as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.

Pull the dipstick out again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick as follows: Ⓐ: do not refill oil . Proceed to step 15. Ⓑ: oil can be refilled (approximately 0.5 l). Proceed to step 8 or 15. Ⓒ: oil must be refilled (approximately 1.0 l). Proceed to step 8.

- ✓ After reading the oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go.
- ✓ Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap .
- ✓ Using only the engine oil approved by Volkswagen expressly for this engine, top up the oil in small gradual amounts (no more than 0.5 l).
- ✓ To avoid overfilling, wait for approximately one minute after each pour to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil sump up to the marking on the engine oil dipstick.
- ✓ Read the engine oil level from the dipstick again before refilling with a further small quantity of engine oil. Never overfill engine oil .
- ✓ After the refilling procedure, the engine oil level should be at least in the centre of area Ⓑ, but never above area Ⓐ .
- ✓ After refilling, screw the engine oil filler cap back on correctly.
- ✓ Reinsert the oil dipstick correctly into the guide tube as far as it will go.
- ✓ Close the bonnet correctly .

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine components. It can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- **If engine oil is spilt on cold engine parts it can heat up and ignite when the engine is running.**
- **Always ensure that the engine oil filler cap is securely tightened after refilling, and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube. This will prevent the engine oil from draining out on to hot engine components when the engine is running.**

NOTICE

- **Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is above area ⇒ *Fig. 121Ⓐ*. Seek expert assistance. The catalytic converter and the engine could otherwise be damaged.**
- **When refilling or changing operating fluids please ensure that the fluids are in the correct container. Incorrect operating fluids can cause serious functional problems and engine damage.**

The engine oil level must never be above area ⇒ *Fig. 121Ⓐ*. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

Engine oil consumption

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Engine oil consumption can vary from engine to engine and can change during the working life of an engine.

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 1.0 litre/2,000 km – and is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km for new vehicles. The engine oil level must therefore be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before long journeys.

When the engine is working hard the oil level must be kept within the area shown in ⇒ *Fig. 121Ⓐ*, for instance during long motorway cruising in summer or climbing mountain passes.

Changing engine oil

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The engine oil must be changed regularly in accordance with the data given in the service schedule.

The engine oil and filter should always be changed, and used oil disposed of, by a qualified workshop due to the special tools and knowledge required. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

More details on the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Additives in the engine oil can cause new engine oil to discolour quickly. This is normal and does not mean that the engine oil should be changed more frequently.

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional cases, you have to carry out an oil change yourself, please note the following:

- **Always wear eye protection.**
- **Always allow the engine to cool down completely to avoid burns.**
- **Keep your arms horizontal when removing the oil drain plug with your fingers to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be at least large enough to hold the entire quantity of engine oil required for refilling.**
- **Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.**

Before changing the engine oil, first find out where old oil can be disposed of properly near you.

Used oil must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. Never dispose of old oil in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ Warning lamp for coolant
⇒ Coolant specification
⇒ Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant

Never carry out any work on the engine coolant system if you are not familiar with the requisite procedures, or if you do not have access to the correct tools, operating equipment and fluids ⇒⚠. The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

Additional information and warnings:

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment *⇒ Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts *⇒ Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic.

- **Engine coolant should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.**
- **Never store engine coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine coolant.**
- **The engine coolant must be stored out of the reach of children.**
- **Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.**
- **Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will also no longer function.**

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

Warning lamp for coolant

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	Engine coolant temperature is too low in vehicles with natural gas engine.	Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads.

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Coolant temperature too high.	**Do not drive on!** Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Switch off the engine, leave the engine to cool down.
	Coolant level too low.	**Do not drive on!** After the engine has cooled down, check the coolant level and refill engine coolant if the level is too low ⇒ *Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant*.
	With display **–.-** in the instrument cluster: fault in the engine cooling system.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always observe any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

In some vehicles, the coolant temperature display may be displayed on the screen of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*.

Coolant specification

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive **G 13** (TL-VW 774 J). The coolant additive is dyed purple. This mixture of water and coolant additive gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. The mixture also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

In order to protect the coolant system, the proportion of coolant additive must *always* be at least 40%, even if anti-freeze is not required in warm weather and warm climates.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of anti-freeze additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection and the cooling effect.

When topping up the coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% coolant additive - G 13 - or - G 12 plus-plus - (TL-VW 774 G) (both of which are dyed purple) must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection ⇒. Mixing - G 13 - with the coolant additives - G 12 plus - (TL-VW 774 F), - G 12 - (dyed red) or - G 11 - (dyed blue-green) will significantly decrease the level of corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided ⇒.

WARNING

Insufficient anti-freeze in the coolant system can cause the engine to break down and cause serious injuries.

- **Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.**
- **Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will also no longer function.**

NOTICE

Never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolants that have not been approved by Volkswagen. Mixing other coolants could cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

- **If the liquid in the coolant expansion tank is brown instead of purple, for example, - G 13 - has been mixed with another unsuitable engine coolant. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case. Failure to observe this point can result in serious faults or engine damage.**

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant

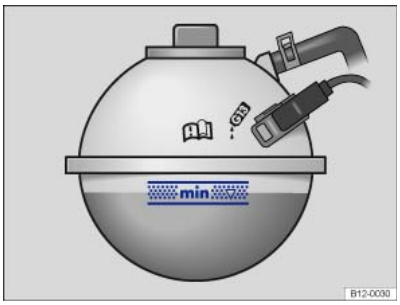


Fig. 123 In the engine compartment: marking on the coolant expansion tank

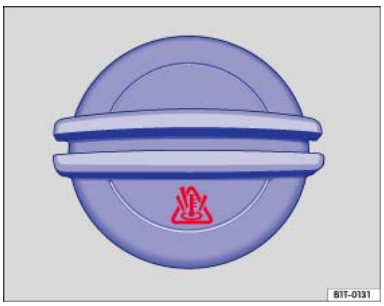


Fig. 124 In the engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The warning lamp for the engine coolant will light up if the engine coolant level is too low.

Preparation

- Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface.
- Allow the engine to cool down ⇒.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ .
- The coolant expansion tank has the symbol on its cap ⇒ *Fig. 124*.

Checking the coolant level

- Check the coolant level at the side marking of the expansion tank when the engine is cold ⇒ *Fig. 123*.
- Refill the coolant if the liquid level is below the minimum marking (min). When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the top end of the marked area.

Refilling coolant

- Always protect your hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth on the cap of the coolant expansion tank.

- Unscrew the cap carefully ⇒⚠.
- Refill only **new** coolant according to the Volkswagen specification (⇒ *Coolant specification*) ⇒ ⓘ.
- The coolant level must be between the marks on the expansion tank ⇒ *Fig. 123*. **Do not fill up over the top line of the marked area**⇒ⓘ!
- Close the cap tightly.
- If in an emergency you do not have access to the coolant of the required specification (⇒ *Coolant specification*), do not use any other coolant additive. Instead, initially refill with **distilled water**⇒ⓘ only. Then add the correct proportion of coolant additive as soon as possible ⇒ *Coolant specification*.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam or engine coolant can cause serious burns.

- **Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or engine coolant coming out of the engine compartment. Always wait until no escaping steam or coolant can be seen or heard.**
- **Always allow the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the bonnet. Hot components can burn the skin.**
- **Before opening the bonnet once it has cooled down:**
  - Apply the handbrake fully and move the selector lever to position N or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.
  - Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- **The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and injuries.**
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting some downward pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- **When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids can start a fire. In certain circumstances, the ethylene glycol in the engine can catch fire.**

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- **Refill only with distilled water. All other types of water can cause corrosion in the engine due to the chemical components contained therein. This can also lead to engine failure. If any other type of water is refilled, the fluid in the engine cooling system should be completely replaced immediately by a qualified workshop.**
- **Do not fill coolant above the top of the marked area *⇒ Fig. 123*. Otherwise the excess coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot and could cause damage.**
- **If a large amount of coolant has been lost, do not refill the coolant until the engine has *cooled completely*. Heavy coolant loss is an indication of leaks in the engine cooling system. The engine cooling system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.**
- **When refilling operating fluids, please ensure that the correct container is filled. The use of incorrect operating fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!**

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Warning lamp*

⇒ *Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery*

⇒ *Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*

The vehicle battery is a component of the electrical system in the vehicle.

Never carry out any work on the electrical system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements and only unsuitable tools are available ⇒⚠. The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

Location of the vehicle battery

The vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment.

Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	No fires, sparks, naked lights or smoking!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!
	Always keep children away from acid and the vehicle battery!

Additional information and warnings:

- ⇒Booklet *Service schedule*,
- Pull-away assist systems ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Any work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the following warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work:

- **Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the vehicle battery.**
- **Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.**
- **Always wear eye protection.**
- **Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, protect your hands, arms and particularly your face from acid spillages.**
- **Do not smoke during the work, and never work near naked flames or sparks.**
- **When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charge.**
- **Never short circuit the battery poles.**
- **Never use a damaged vehicle battery. It can explode. Damaged vehicle batteries must be replaced as soon as possible.**
- **Damaged or frozen vehicle batteries must be replaced immediately. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).**

NOTICE

- **Do not allow direct sunlight onto the vehicle battery for an extended period as the UV rays could damage the battery housing.**
- **If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the vehicle battery from frost. If it freezes it will be damaged.**

NOTICE

Operation of the vehicle for a very long time at very high outside temperatures can lead to vehicle battery damage.

After starting the engine with a discharged vehicle battery, or after the battery has been changed, system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

Warning lamp

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	Fault in the alternator.	Proceed to a qualified workshop. The electrical system should be checked. Switch off all electrical equipment that is not required. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator while the vehicle is in motion.

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	Start/stop system cannot start the engine.	⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never ignore any warning lamps that are lit up.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.**

NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery

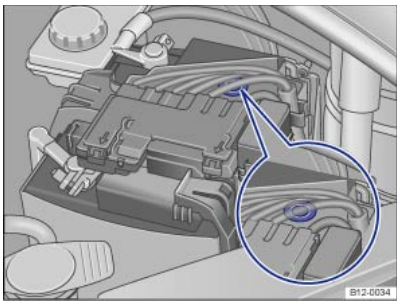


Fig. 125 In the engine compartment: possible position of the window on top of the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older vehicle batteries. The vehicle battery is otherwise maintenance-free.

Vehicles with a start/stop system ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems* are fitted with special vehicle batteries. For technical reasons, it might not be possible to check the electrolyte level in these vehicle batteries.

Preparation

- Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ .

Checking the electrolyte level

- Ensure that enough light is available for you to see the colours clearly. Never use naked flames or glowing matter (e.g. cigarettes) as a light source.
- The colour display in the round window ⇒ *Fig. 125* on the top side of the vehicle battery will change according to the electrolyte level.

Colour display	Action
Light yellow or *colourless*	The electrolyte level of the vehicle is too low. The vehicle battery should be checked and replaced by a qualified workshop if necessary.
Black	The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery is correct.

WARNING

Any work on the vehicle battery can cause serious chemical burns, explosions and electric shocks.

- **Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.**
- **Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, protect your hands, arms and particularly your face from acid spillages.**
- **Never tilt the vehicle battery. Electrolyte may spill out of the battery vents and cause chemical burns.**
- **Never open a vehicle battery.**
- **If acid is splashed onto your skin or into your eye, rinse immediately for several minutes with cold water. Then consult a doctor immediately.**
- **If acid is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.**

Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop, as the technology used in factory-fitted batteries requires voltage-limited charging ⇒. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If a vehicle battery has to be replaced, discuss the electromagnetic compatibility, size and necessary servicing, output and safety requirements for the new vehicle battery with a Volkswagen dealership before purchase. Volkswagen recommends that the vehicle battery is changed by a Volkswagen dealership.

Only maintenance-free vehicle batteries compliant with the standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 should be used. These standards must be dated April 2008 or later.

Vehicles with start/stop system ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems* are equipped with a special vehicle battery. These vehicle batteries may only be replaced by a vehicle battery with the same specifications.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

Please note the following if the vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition.
- Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery in order to avoid triggering the alarm.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable ⇒.

Connecting the vehicle battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition before reconnecting the vehicle battery.
- First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative cable ⇒.

Various indicator lamps may light up after the vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. They will go out if you drive a short distance at a speed of 15–20 km/h (10–12 mph). If the indicator lamps remain lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop.

If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods, the system may not able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due ⇒ *Instruments*. Comply with the maximum permissible service intervals ⇒Booklet*Service schedule*,.

Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers

The intelligent vehicle electrical system automatically implements a range of measures to prevent the battery from discharging under high loads:

- The idling speed is increased so that the alternator provides more electricity.
- The performance of large electrical consumers may be reduced or they may be switched off completely.
- The power supply to the 12-volt socket and the cigarette lighter is interrupted temporarily while the engine is being started.

The vehicle electrical system cannot always prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. For example when the ignition is switched on for an extended period with the engine off, or when the side or parking lights are on when the vehicle is parked for an extended period.

How the vehicle battery discharges:

- Long periods at a standstill in which the engine is not running, especially if the ignition is switched on.
- The use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.

WARNING

Incorrectly attaching the battery and using incorrect vehicle batteries can cause short circuits, fire and serious injuries.

- **Always use maintenance-free and leak-proof batteries that have the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted vehicle battery.**

WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is being charged.

- **Vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated spaces.**
- **Never charge a vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).**
- **A vehicle battery must be replaced if it has been frozen.**
- **Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.**

NOTICE

- **Never make or break connections between vehicle batteries if the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Never use a vehicle battery that does not correspond with the vehicle's specifications. The vehicle's electrical system or electronic components could be damaged, which could lead to electrical faults, for example in the start/stop system.**
- **Never connect equipment that provides electricity, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket or to the cigarette lighter to charge the vehicle battery. This can damage the vehicle electrical system.**

Dispose of the vehicle battery as required by legislation. Batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

Electrolyte can pollute the environment. Clean up any service fluid leakages and dispose of them properly.

Vehicle care and maintenance

Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Washing the vehicle*
⇒ *Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner*
⇒ *Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors*
⇒ *Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades*
⇒ *Waxing and polishing the vehicle*
⇒ *Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts*
⇒ *Cleaning wheels*
⇒ *Care of rubber seals*
⇒ *De-icing the door lock cylinders*
⇒ *Underseal*
⇒ *Cleaning the engine compartment*

Regular and expert care helps to **maintain the value** of the vehicle. Proper maintenance may also be one of the requirements for the approval of warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

Suitable care products are available from Volkswagen dealers.

Additional information and warnings:

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Cleaning and caring for the interior ⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Car care products can be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- **The care product must be kept in its original sealed container.**
- **Read the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Never store car care products in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain care products.**
- **Keep children away from care products.**
- **The products can give off harmful fumes during use. They should therefore only be used outside or in well-ventilated spaces.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. These substances are toxic and highly inflammable.**

WARNING

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and thus cause serious injury.

- **Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Only use approved or recommended cleaning products.**

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain solvents attack the material and can cause damage.

In the interests of environmental protection, the vehicle should only be washed in specially provided wash bays. This prevents waste water contaminated with oil, grease or fuel from entering the sewerage system. In some countries, washing vehicles anywhere else may be prohibited.

Environmentally-friendly care products should be used.

Leftover car care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. Read the manufacturer's instructions.

Washing the vehicle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other corrosive materials remain on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect. The **underside** of the vehicle should also be cleaned thoroughly and regularly.

Car washes

Please observe the signs on the automatic car wash. Before using an automatic car wash take the usual precautions, such as closing all windows and folding in the exterior mirrors, in order to avoid damage to the vehicle. You must consult the car wash operator if there are special parts on your vehicle such as spoilers, roof luggage carrier systems or radio aerials ⇒.

The paint is hard-wearing enough for the car to be generally washed in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the car wash. Volkswagen recommends the use of car washes without brushes.

To remove any waxy residue from the windows and to stop wipers rubbing, please note the following ⇒ *Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors*.

Washing the car by hand

When washing by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **glove** or a **brush** using only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom. Use a **shampoo** for very stubborn dirt only.

The sponge or glove should be wrung out thoroughly at regular intervals.

Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last. Use a different sponge for this purpose.

WARNING

Parts of the vehicle with sharp edges can cause injury.

- **Protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp parts, for example when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.**

WARNING

After the car has been washed, the braking effect could set in later than normal and extend the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up in winter.

- **You can dry and de-ice the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal regulations when doing so.**

NOTICE

- **The water should be no warmer than +60°C (+140°F).**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight in order to avoid damage to the vehicle paintwork.**
- **Never clean with insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar products as these can damage the surface.**
- **Never clean the headlights with a dry cloth or sponge. Always use a wet cloth or sponge. It is best to use soapy water.**
- **Washing the vehicle in cold weather: If the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps round the doors, boot, or bonnet. The locks and seals could freeze.**

NOTICE

Observe the following guidelines before driving the vehicle into an automatic car wash in order to avoid damage to the vehicle:

- **Ensure that the gap between the guide rails in the car wash is sufficient for the vehicle track. If the track is too narrow your wheels and tyres will be damaged.**
- **Switch off the city emergency brake function before driving the vehicle into an automatic car wash.**
- **Check that the car wash is tall and wide enough for your vehicle.**
- **Fold in the exterior mirrors.**
- **In order to prevent damage to the paintwork on the bonnet, fold the windscreen wipers back onto the windscreen after drying the wiper blades. Do not drop the wipers onto the glass.**
- **Lock the tailgate to prevent it from opening accidentally in the car wash.**

Washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer when cleaning your vehicle using a high-pressure cleaner. This applies in particular to the **pressure** and the **spraying distance⇒**.

Maintain sufficient distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses, insulation, and the ParkPilot sensors. The ParkPilot sensors are located in the rear bumper ⇒.

Never use **concentrated jet nozzles** or **dirt blasters⇒**.

WARNING

The incorrect use of a high-pressure cleaner can cause visible and invisible long-term damage to tyres and other materials. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Maintain sufficient distance between the washer jet and the tyres.**
- **Never clean the tyres with concentrated jet nozzles (dirt blasters). The tyres may incur visible and invisible damage even if cleaned briefly with the spray at a distance.**

WARNING

After the car has been washed, the braking effect could set in later than normal and extend the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up in winter.

- **You can dry and de-ice the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal regulations when doing so.**

NOTICE

- **The water may be no warmer than +60°C (+140°F).**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight in order to avoid damage to the vehicle paintwork.**
- **The ParkPilot sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice to guarantee correct function. When cleaning with pressure hoses or steam cleaners, the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and the steam/hose nozzle must be kept more than 10 cm away.**
- **Do not clean windows that are iced over or covered in snow with a high-pressure cleaner.**
- **Washing the vehicle in cold weather: if the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps round the doors, boot, or bonnet. The locks and seals could freeze.**

Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

Moisten the windows and exterior mirrors with commercially available, alcohol-based glass cleaner.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth. Chamois leathers that have been used on painted surfaces are not suitable for use on glass surfaces. They will be soiled with wax deposits which could smear the surfaces.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to clean off rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits ⇒ .

Removing wax

Car washes and care products could leave **wax deposits** on the glass surfaces. Wax residue can only be removed using a special cleaning product or cleaning cloths. Wax deposits on the windscreen can cause the wiper blades to rub. Volkswagen recommends using a glass cleaning cloth - G 052 522 A1 - to remove wax deposits from the windows and exterior mirrors each time the vehicle is washed.

A window cleaner specifically for removing wax will stop the blades rubbing if added to the windscreen wash water. Dilute the cleaner as instructed. Grease removing cleaners will not remove wax deposits ⇒.

Special cleaners, glass cleaners and glass cleaning cloths are available from Volkswagen dealerships.

Removing snow

Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and exterior mirrors.

Removing ice

The best method for removing ice is to use a de-icer spray. If you use an ice scraper, **do not** move it to and fro, but push it in one direction only. Moving the ice scraper backwards can cause dirt to scratch the window.

WARNING

Dirty or misted windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- **Only drive when you have a clear view through all windows.**
- **Ice, snow and mist must be removed from the inside and outside of all windows.**

NOTICE

- **Never combine the recommended cleaning agents with other cleaning agents for use in the windscreen washer fluid. This can cause the ingredients to separate and block the washer jets.**
- **Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This can cause the glass to crack.**
- **The heating elements for the rear window heater are located on the inside of the rear window. Never apply stickers over the heating elements and never clean the inside of the rear window with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.**

Cleaning and changing windscreen wiper blades

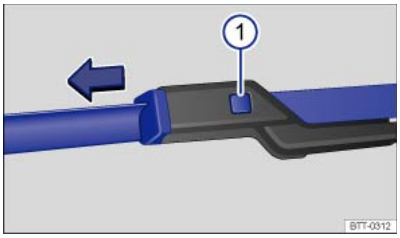


Fig. 126 Changing the windscreen wiper blades

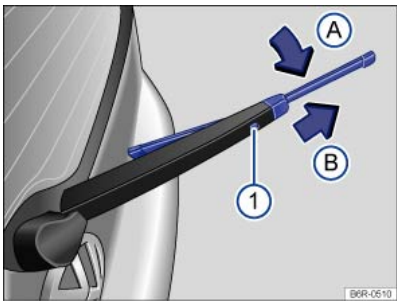


Fig. 127 Changing the rear window wiper blade

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The factory-fitted windscreen wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating ensures that the windscreen wiper blade moves quietly over the windscreen. If the graphite coating is damaged, the windscreen wiper will become louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades on a regular basis. **Rubbing wiper blades** should be changed if damaged or cleaned if dirty ⇒.

Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. Windscreen wiper blades can be bought from a qualified workshop.

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Note for the front windscreen wiper: move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting them ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*.

- When lifting a wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.
- Clean the windscreen wiper blade carefully using a damp cloth ⇒.
- Place the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

- Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting ⇒ *Windscreen wiper and washer*.
- When lifting a wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.
- Press and hold the release button ⇒ *Fig. 126①* and simultaneously pull off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert a new wiper blade with the **same length and design** onto the wiper arm. Push it on until it engages.

- Place the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

Changing the wiper blade for the rear window

- When lifting a wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.
- Lift the wiper blade arm and fold away at an angle of 60°.
- Press and hold the release button ①.
- Tilt the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm ⇒ *Fig. 127* (arrow Ⓐ) and pull it off in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ at the same time. You may need to use some force to do this.
- Insert a new wiper blade with the **same length and design** onto the wiper arm against the direction of the arrow. Push it on until it engages ⇒ *Fig. 127Ⓒ*. The wiper blade must be in the tilted position (arrow Ⓐ).
- Place the wiper arm back onto the rear window.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- **Therefore, always change windscreen wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreen properly.**

NOTICE

- **Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers can scratch the windscreen.**
- **Detergents containing solvents, hard sponges and other sharp objects can damage the graphite coating.**
- **Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows.**

Wax deposits on the windscreen and rear window could cause the wiper blades to rub. Remove wax residue using a special cleaning product or cleaning cloths.

Waxing and polishing the vehicle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Waxing

Waxing protects the paintwork. You will need to re-wax the vehicle with a good **hard wax** if water no longer clearly forms **small drops** and runs off the paintwork when it is *clean*.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly in the car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The car must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

NOTICE

- **In order to avoid damage, painted parts with a matt finish, plastic parts, headlight lenses and the tail lights should not be treated with polish or hard wax.**
- **Do not polish the paint if the vehicle is in a sandy or dusty environment or if it is dirty.**

Cleaning and caring for chrome and aluminium trim parts

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

- Use a damp, clean, lint-free and soft cloth to clean the surfaces.
- For heavy soiling use a special **solvent-free** cleaning product.
- Polish the chrome and aluminium trim parts using a soft, dry cloth.

NOTICE

To ensure that the chrome and aluminium parts are not damaged:

- **Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.**
- **Do not clean or polish in sandy or dusty environments.**
- **Do not use any abrasive care products (e.g. cream cleaners).**
- **Never clean with insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar products.**
- **Do not polish any dirty surfaces.**
- **Do not use solvent-based cleaning products.**
- **Do not use hard wax.**

NOTICE

Chrome rims or wheel covers may also have an additional varnish finish and should not be treated using chrome or aluminium cleaning agents or chrome or aluminium polish. A normal commercially available paint cleaning product should be used instead.

Cleaning wheels

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Cleaning steel wheels

An industrial cleaner is needed to remove accumulated brake dust. Steel wheels should therefore be cleaned regularly with a separate sponge.

Any damage to the paint on steel wheels should be touched up before the metal starts to rust.

Caring for and cleaning alloy wheels

Wash grit and brake dust from alloy wheels approximately **every 2 weeks**. Then use an acid-free detergent to clean the wheels. Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels approximately **every 3 months**.

It is important to remove road salt and brake dust by washing the wheels at regular intervals, otherwise the finish will be impaired.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels. Car polish or other abrasive agents should not be used on the wheels.

If the protective coating is damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

Care of rubber seals

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The rubber seals on the doors, windows etc. will seal better, remain flexible and last longer if they are treated at regular intervals with a suitable care product.

Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.

De-icing the door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Volkswagen recommends the use of genuine Volkswagen spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to de-ice the lock cylinders.

NOTICE

Do not use lock de-icers containing substances that dissolve grease, as this can cause the door lock cylinder to rust.

Underseal

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The underside of the vehicle is coated to protect it from corrosion and damage. The protective coating on the underside of the vehicle could be damaged when driving. Volkswagen therefore

recommends that the protective coating on the underside of the vehicle and on the running gear should be checked regularly and repaired if necessary.

CAUTION

Underseal and anti-corrosion coatings can ignite on the hot exhaust system or on other hot engine parts.

- **Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, heat shields or other vehicle components that become hot.**

Cleaning the engine compartment

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.

The engine compartment should be cleaned by a qualified workshop. An incorrect cleaning procedure could possibly remove corrosion protection and damage electrical components. Furthermore, water could enter the vehicle interior directly via the plenum chamber ⇒.

If the engine compartment is very dirty, we recommend that you always proceed to a qualified workshop to have it cleaned by a professional mechanic. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Plenum chamber

The plenum chamber is located in the engine compartment between the windscreen and the engine and has a perforated cover. Air from outside is drawn in from the plenum chamber and is passed into the vehicle interior via the heating and air conditioning system.

Leaves and other loose objects must be removed from the cover of the plenum chamber at regular intervals using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.

WARNING

All work in the engine compartment carries the risk of injury, scalding, accidents and fire.

- **Before carrying out any work ensure that you are familiar with the requisite procedures and general safety regulations ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.**
- **Volkswagen recommends having the work carried out by a qualified workshop.**

NOTICE

Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process (e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner) can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

In the interests of environmental protection, the engine compartment should be washed only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic waste water containing oil, grease and fuel from entering the sewerage system. In some districts, washing the engine compartment anywhere else may be prohibited.

Cleaning and caring for the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Seat covers*
⇒ *Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara upholstery*
⇒ *Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers*
⇒ *Cleaning leatherette upholstery*
⇒ *Cleaning stowage compartments, drink holders and ash trays*
⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts*
⇒ *Cleaning seat belts*

Modern fabrics, such as dark denim, are often not colourfast. Light-coloured upholstery (soft materials or leather) is particularly sensitive to staining caused by these fabrics, even if you are careful. This is not caused by a fault in the upholstery, but by the non-colourfast nature of the garments.

Leaving stains, dirt and other deposits on the surface of vehicle components and cloth seat covers for a long time can make it difficult to clean and treat them. Stains, dirt and deposits may become impossible to remove, particularly if left for a long time.

Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*

- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*

WARNING

Car care products can be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- **The care product must be kept in its original sealed container.**
- **Read the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Never store car care products in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain care products.**
- **Keep children away from care products.**
- **The products can give off harmful fumes during use. They should therefore only be used outside or in well-ventilated spaces.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. These substances are toxic and highly inflammable.**

WARNING

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and cause serious injury.

- **Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Only use approved or recommended cleaning products.**

NOTICE

- **Cleaning products that contain solvents attack the material and may cause irreparable damage.**
- **Stains, dirt and other deposits containing aggressive and solvent-based ingredients attack the material and may cause irreparable damage, even if only left for a short time.**
- **Stains, dirt and other deposits should be removed as quickly as possible and not allowed to dry in.**
- **To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company.**

Suitable care products are available from a Volkswagen dealership.

Seat covers

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Checklist

Please note the following for the cleaning and maintenance of the seat covers ⇒:

✓ Before getting into the vehicle, close all Velcro fasteners that could touch the cloth seat covers and fabric trims. Open Velcro fasteners can cause damage to cloth seat covers and fabric trims.

✓ Avoid the direct contact of sharp-edged items and accessories to the upholstery and fabric trims in order to prevent damage. Accessories include zips, studs, rhinestones on clothing or belts.

✓ Dust and grit in upholstery pores, folds and seams should be removed regularly so that no permanent damage is caused to the surface of the seats by scratching.

✓ Always check whether garments are colourfast to prevent damage to the upholstery. This is especially important for light-coloured upholstery.

NOTICE

Ignoring any of the items on this important checklist for maintaining the seat covers can lead to damage or discolouration of the seat covers and fabric trims.

- **Follow the instructions on the checklist.**

Volkswagen recommends that stained upholstery is cleaned by a specialist company.

Cleaning cloth seat covers, fabric trim and Alcantara® upholstery

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating, electrically adjustable seats, or seats containing airbag components

Airbag-related components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, passenger seat and sometimes also in the rear outer seats. Seat cushions or backrests that are damaged, incorrectly cleaned or treated, or that become wet, may cause damage to the vehicle electrics or trigger a fault in the airbag system ⇒.

Electrical components and connectors are installed in electrically adjustable seats and seat cushions with seat heating. These can be damaged if cleaned or treated incorrectly ⇒. This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrics.

For this reason, please follow these cleaning guidelines:

- Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
- Do not use washing paste or fine detergent solutions.
- Avoid getting the seat wet.
- Only use detergents that have been approved by Volkswagen.
- If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions without seat heating, seats that are not electrically adjustable, and seats that do not contain airbag components

- Please read and follow the instructions, notes and warnings on the package before using cleaning products.
- Upholstery, fabric trims, Alcantara® seat covers and carpeting should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner (brush).
- Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
- We recommend that you use a soft sponge or commercially available lint-free microfibre cloth for cleaning jobs ⇒.
- Clean Alcantara® surfaces with a slightly damp cotton or woollen cloth or a commercially available lint-free microfibre cloth ⇒.

General surface soiling of the upholstery and fabric trim can be cleaned with a commercially available foam cleaner.

If the upholstery and fabric trims are generally heavily soiled, consult a Volkswagen dealership for information on suitable cleaning methods before attempting any cleaning. If required, take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning company.

Treating stains

When treating stains, it may be necessary to clean the entire surface and not just the stain itself. This particularly applies if the surface shows general signs of wear. The cleaned area could otherwise be lighter than the surrounding area. If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

Type of stain	Recommended cleaning method for seat cushions and upholstery
Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, fruit juice.	– Moisten a sponge using a spray bottle and treat the stain by rubbing it in a circular motion. – Wipe with a dry absorbent cloth.
Stubborn stains, e.g. chocolate, foundation.	– Only use detergents approved by Volkswagen. – If required, take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning firm to have the upholstery cleaned.
Oily stains, e.g. oil, lipstick.	– Only use detergents approved by Volkswagen. – If required, take the vehicle to a specialist cleaning firm to have the upholstery cleaned.

WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not function properly, or not function at all or function unexpectedly. This could cause accidents and fatal injuries.

- **The airbag system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.**

NOTICE

If the upholstery on electrically adjustable seats or on seat cushions containing airbag components gets wet, electric components and the vehicle electrics could be damaged.

- **A wet seat cushion should always be dried out, and system components checked, by a qualified workshop.**
- **Do not use steam cleaners as the steam pushes the soiling into the fabric and sets it.**
- **High-pressure cleaners and coolant sprays can damage the upholstery.**

NOTICE

- **Brushes should be used on carpets and mats only. Other surfaces could be damaged by brushes.**
- **When washing paste or fine detergent solutions are applied with a damp cloth or sponge, visible edges may appear on the upholstery once it has dried. This can be due to substances such as surfactants. These edges are usually difficult or even impossible to remove.**

NOTICE

- **Do not soak Alcantara® under any circumstances.**
- **Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar products on Alcantara®.**
- **Do not use brushes if cleaning with liquids. This could damage the surface of the material.**

Cleaning and caring for natural leather covers

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Please contact a Volkswagen dealership or other qualified workshop if you have any questions on cleaning and caring for the leather equipment in your vehicle.

Care and use

Natural leather is sensitive as it does not have a uniform coating of dye.

- Use a leather cream with sunlight protection and impregnation properties on a regular basis and always after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, keeps it breathable and supple and replaces lost moisture. It also protects the surface.
- Leather should be cleaned every two to three months and fresh stains removed.
- Treat the leather with a special leather care product every six months ⇒.
- Always apply cleaning and care products extremely sparingly and always use a dry cotton or woollen cloth that is free from fluff. Do not apply cleaning and care products directly to the leather.
- Remove fresh stains such as ink, ball-point pen ink, lipstick, shoe cream etc. as quickly as possible.
- Look after the pigment. Use a special coloured leather cream to refresh the colour where necessary.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth.

Cleaning

Volkswagen recommends that you use a damp cotton or wool cloth for general cleaning purposes.

Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

Please observe the following notes **prior to cleaning** the leather upholstery ⇒ *Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating, electrically adjustable seats, or seats containing airbag components*.

Type of stain	Cleaning
Stubborn stains	– Use a wrung-out cloth to apply a mild soap solution[a)]. – Dry with an absorbent, dry cloth.
Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, juice, blood etc.	– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth, – If the stain has already dried, use a suitable cleaning agent ⇒.
Oily stains, e.g. oil, lipstick etc.	– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth. – If the stain has not yet penetrated the surface, use a suitable cleaning agent ⇒.
Difficult stains, e.g. biro, felt tip pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish etc.	– Dry with an absorbent, dry cloth. – Clean with a suitable leather stain remover.

NOTICE

- **Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.**
- **Stains cannot be removed if they has been left on the leather for a long time and have penetrated the surface.**
- **Spilt liquids should be cleaned immediately using an absorbent cloth as the leather surface and the stitching absorb liquids quickly.**
- **If the car is left standing outdoors for long periods, the leather should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading.**

However, slight colour variations will arise in normal use.

[a] Mild soap solution: two tablespoons neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.

Cleaning leatherette upholstery

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Please observe the following notes prior to cleaning the leatherette upholstery ⇒ *Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating, electrically adjustable seats, or seats containing airbag components*.

Only use water and neutral detergents to clean the leatherette upholstery.

NOTICE

Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on the leatherette upholstery. These may cause the material to become hard and brittle prematurely.

Cleaning stowage compartments, drink holders and ash trays

Fig. 128 In the centre console: stowage compartment with drink holder

Fig. 129 Ashtray with snuffer, removed and opened

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Cleaning stowage compartments and drink holders

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

Cleaning the ashtray

- Remove and empty the ashtray.
- Wipe the ashtray with a cloth to clean it.

To clean the snuffer ⇒ *Fig. 129*, use a toothpick or similar object to pick out the ashes.

Cleaning and caring for the dash panel, wooden trims and plastic parts

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- Treat *plastic parts (inside and outside the vehicle) and the dash panel* with a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care product that has been approved by Volkswagen ⇒⚠.
- Treat *wooden trims* with a mild soap solution.
- Clean the *mount for the portable navigation device* using a dry cloth only.

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents cause the surface of the airbag modules to become porous. In an accident that triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.

- **Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.**

NOTICE

When cleaning the dash panel, ensure that the contacts for the portable navigation device do not become wet as this could cause damage to the electrical system.

Cleaning seat belts

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Large particles of dirt on the automatic belt prevent it from rolling back properly and thus from working effectively.

The seat belts must never be removed for cleaning purposes.

- Remove dirt with a soft brush ⇒⚠.
- Carefully pull the dirty seat belt right out and leave it out.
- Clean the seat belt with a *mild* soap solution.
- Allow the seat belt fabric to dry completely.
- Do not allow the seat belt to roll up until it has dried completely.

⚠ WARNING

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged have it removed and replaced immediately by a qualified workshop. Damaged seat belts are very dangerous and can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- **Never use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts or their components. Furthermore the seat belts may not come into contact with corrosive fluids, solvents or sharp objects. These could considerably weaken the webbing.**
- **After cleaning, allow seat belts to dry completely before rolling them up. Otherwise the automatic belt retractors could become damaged and thus impair their function.**
- **Never let any foreign bodies or liquids enter the slot for the seat belt buckle. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.**
- **Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself.**
- **Damaged seat belts must be replaced immediately with seat belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Seat belts subjected to stress and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.**

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Handling wheels and tyres*
⇒ *Rims*
⇒ *New wheels and tyres*
⇒ *Tyre pressure*
⇒ *Tread depth and wear indicators*
⇒ *Tyre damage*
⇒ *Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel*
⇒ *Tyre lettering*
⇒ *Winter tyres*
⇒ *Snow chains*

Volkswagen recommends that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by a qualified workshop. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts and the

proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Additional information and warnings:

- Transporting ⇒ *Driving notes*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*
- Vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*
- Hubcaps ⇒ *Hubcaps*
- Changing a wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel*
- Breakdown set ⇒ *Breakdown set*

WARNING

New tyres or tyres which are old, worn down or damaged cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking power.

- **Incorrect handling of wheels and tyres can reduce vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.**
- **New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect. Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.**
- **Check tyre pressures regularly and always keep to the specified tyre pressure value. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.**
- **Never drive with worn tyres or tyres that are damaged (cuts, cracks or blisters). Driving with tyres in this condition can result in blown tyres, accidents and serious injuries. Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced as soon as possible.**
- **Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.**
- **The effectiveness of the driver assist systems and brake assist systems depends on the tyre grip.**
- **If you notice unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the car immediately and check the wheels and tyres for damage.**
- **In order to reduce the risk of losing control of the vehicle, and the risk of accident and serious injury, never loosen the bolts on rims with bolted on rim rings.**
- **Do not use wheels or tyres if you do not know their history. Used wheels and tyres could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.**
- **Even if they have not been used, old tyres can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds, and thus cause accidents and serious injuries. Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type. Refer to the vehicle documentation and ask a Volkswagen dealership if necessary.

Handling wheels and tyres

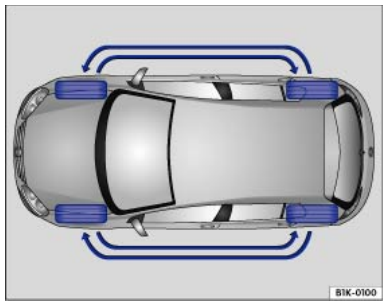


Fig. 130 Diagram showing how to swap wheels

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

The tyres are the most used and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Tyres are very important as the narrow tyre surfaces are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style handling and fitting.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specifically matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

Avoiding damage to the tyres

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive slowly and at a right angle if possible.
- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage such as cuts, cracks or blisters.
- Remove foreign objects that are in the outer tyre tread and **have not penetrated the inner tyre** ⇒ *Tyre damage*.
- Always respond to any warning messages given by the tyre monitoring system.
- Damaged or worn tyres must be replaced immediately ⇒ *Tyre damage*.
- Regularly check the tyres for hidden damage ⇒ *Tyre damage*.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted ⇒ *Tyre lettering*.
- Protect the wheels, including the spare wheel, from contact with corrosive substances, including oils, lubricants, fuel and brake fluid ⇒ ⚠.
- Replace missing dust caps immediately.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in one direction only. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread ⇒ *Tyre lettering*. The direction of rotation must be adhered to. This is the only guarantee for optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

Rotating wheels front to rear

Regularly rotating the wheels as shown in the illustration ⇒ *Fig. 130* is recommended to help ensure that tyres wear evenly. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Volkswagen recommends having the wheels changed by a qualified workshop.

Tyres that are older than 6 years

Tyres age through physical and chemical processes that can impair their function. Tyres that are stored unused for an extended period will harden and become brittle more quickly than tyres which are in constant use.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tyres that are older than 6 years with new tyres. This also applies to tyres, including the spare wheel, which appear to still be in good condition and whose tread depth has not yet reached the minimum value stipulated by legislation ⇒ ⚠.

The age of a tyre can be determined from the manufacturing date, which is a component of the tyre identification number (TIN) ⇒ *Tyre lettering*.

Storing tyres

Mark tyres before you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to mount them correctly when you replace them (left, right, front, rear). When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. **Do not** store tyres mounted on the rim vertically.

Any tyres not fitted on rims should be kept in suitable sleeves to protect against dirt and should be stored vertically (standing on the tread).

⚠ WARNING

Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which can cause the tyre to burst.

- **Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.**

⚠ WARNING

Old tyres – even if they have not been used – can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds, and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**

Old tyres should be disposed of as required by legislation.

Rims

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that the wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly ⇒ *Changing a wheel*.

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type.

The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specifically matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque ⇒ *Changing a wheel*.

Rims with bolted-on rings

Rims with bolted-on rings consist of several components. These components are fastened using special bolts and special fastening technology. This ensures that the wheel functions properly, does not leak, remains safe and runs true. For this reason, damaged rims should be replaced. They may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose ⇒⚠.

Rims with bolted-on trims

Rims may have removable trims that are attached to the rim with self-locking bolts. Damaged trims may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose ⇒⚠.

Rims identification

In some countries, new rims are legally required to contain certain specifications on them. Depending on the country the following specifications can appear on the rims:

- Seal of conformity
- Rim size
- Name of manufacturer or brand name
- Date manufactured (month / year)
- Country of origin
- Production number
- Raw materials batch number
- Product code

⚠ WARNING

The use of unsuitable or damaged rims can impair vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Only use rims that have been approved for the vehicle.**
- **Check the rims regularly for damage and replace as necessary.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect loosening and tightening of the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings.**
- **All work on rims with bolted-on rings must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.**

New wheels and tyres

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

New tyres

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km with new tyres as the tyres have to be *run in*. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip ⇒⚠ and braking effect ⇒⚠.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.

- The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Replacing tyres

- Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together) ⇒⚠.
- Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type. Ensure that the tyres used are correct in respect of size, diameter, load-carrying capacity and maximum speed.
- Never use tyres with an effective size that is larger than Volkswagen-approved tyres. Larger wheels could rub against the body or other parts of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.

- **Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.**

⚠ WARNING

Wheels must have the necessary freedom of operation. If the wheels do not have the necessary freedom of operation, the tyre could rub on parts of the running gear, the vehicle body and the brake lines. This can lead to a fault in the brake system and to tread separation and thus to a tyre bursting.

- **The actual tyre size must not exceed the tyre dimensions of manufacturers approved by Volkswagen and must not rub on any vehicle body parts.**

Despite identical size details, the actual size of the various tyre makes may vary from these specified dimensions, or the tyre contours may vary considerably.

Volkswagen-approved tyres are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. The salesperson will have to provide a certificate from the tyre manufacturer for other tyre makes to prove that the tyre is also suitable for the vehicle. This certificate must be stored in a safe place in the vehicle.

Tyre pressure

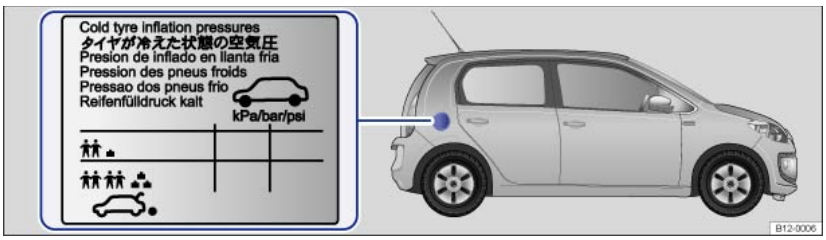


Fig. 131 On the inside of the tank flap: tyre inflation pressure label

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The correct tyre pressure for factory-fitted tyres is shown on a sticker and applies to all-season, summer and winter tyres. The sticker ⇒ *Fig. 131* is located either on the driver door column or inside the tank flap.

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well ⇒⚠. The correct tyre pressure is particularly important at **high speeds**. Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and can cause a tyre burst.

The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

The given tyre pressure applies to **cold tyres**. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres.

For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure. This would result in low tyre pressures that could cause the tyre to burst suddenly.

Checking tyre pressure

Only check the tyre pressure when the tyres have not been driven for more than a few kilometres at low speed in the last three hours.

- The tyre pressures should be checked regularly and only when the tyres are cold. Always check all the tyres, including the spare wheel if fitted. The tyre pressure should be checked more frequently in colder regions, but only if the vehicle has not been moved beforehand. The tyre pressure tester must function correctly.
- The tyre pressures must be altered to suit the vehicle load.

- After altering the tyre pressures, ensure that the valve caps are screwed on.

The **spare wheel** or **temporary spare wheel** are filled to the highest tyre pressure permissible for the vehicle.

WARNING

Too high or too low a pressure may cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure or burst while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- **If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.**
- **Fast speeds or overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and ripping of the tread surface and thus to a loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**
- **Check tyre pressures regularly, at least once a month, and before every long journey.**
- **All tyres must have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.**
- **Never reduce excess pressure when the tyres are warm.**

NOTICE

- **When attaching the tyre pressure gauge, ensure that you do not position it at an angle to the valve shaft. This can damage the tyre valve.**
- **Missing valve caps, or valve caps that are not suitable or not screwed on properly, can cause damage to the tyre valve. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully.**

Under-inflated tyres can contribute to an increase in fuel consumption.

Tread depth and wear indicators

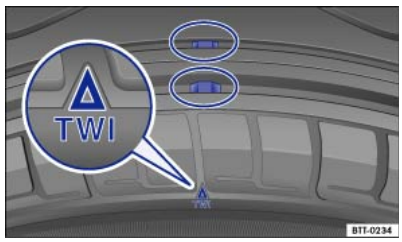


Fig. 132 Tyre tread: wear indicators

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Tread depth

Difficult driving situations demand the deepest possible tread depth for the tyres and the same tread depth for the tyres on the front and rear axles. This applies in particular for driving in winter weather and cold temperatures and in wet conditions ⇒⚠.

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Observe any country-specific legal requirements.

Winter tyres lose a large degree of their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The tread depth of new tyres can vary according to type and manufacturer due to construction and tread design.

Tread wear indicator in tyres

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators running across the tread ⇒ *Fig. 132*. These wear indicators are positioned at set intervals around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters TWI or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tread depth is just before the tread wear indicator.

WARNING

Worn tyres are a safety risk and can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and cause serious injury.

- **Tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators.**
- **Worn tyres have considerably less tread, particularly on wet roads, which can cause the vehicle to glide along the road surface (aquaplaning).**
- **Worn tyres reduce the possibility of controlling the vehicle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distance and the risk of sliding.**

Tyre damage

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. Any unusual **vibrations** or signs that the car is **pulling to one side** may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged ⇒⚠.

- Reduce your speed immediately if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.
- Check the tyres and rims for damage.
- If the tyre is damaged, do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Foreign bodies in the tyre

- Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre. However, foreign bodies that are stuck between the tyre tread blocks can be removed.
- *For vehicles with a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel:* where appropriate, change the damaged wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel* If required, seek expert assistance when changing the damaged wheel. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- *For vehicles with a breakdown set:* if required, seal the tyre and pump it up using the breakdown set ⇒ *Breakdown set*. Proceed to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Check the pressure and adjust it as required.

Tyre wear

Tyre wear is affected by several factors. These include:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Running gear setting.

Driving style – fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. The running gear should be checked by a qualified workshop if the tyres show excessive wear despite a normal driving style.

Unbalanced wheels – the wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration. Unbalanced wheels will affect levels of wear on the steering system and the suspension. In this case the wheels should be balanced again. A new tyre will have to be balanced after fitting.

Running gear setting – incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear.

WARNING

If you notice unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side while the vehicle is in motion, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.

- **Reduce speed immediately and park the vehicle without obstructing traffic.**
- **Check the tyres and rims for damage.**
- **Never drive on if wheels or tyres are damaged. Seek expert assistance instead.**
- **If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.**

Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

Fig. 133 In the luggage compartment: handwheel for securing the spare wheel

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

Removing the spare wheel

- Open the tailgate and lift up the luggage compartment cover ⇒ *Luggage compartment*
- If necessary, remove the variable luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- Lift up the floor covering at the recess and remove from the luggage compartment.
- If necessary, remove the vehicle tools with the container.
- Unscrew the handwheel in the middle of the spare wheel ⇒ *Fig. 133* anticlockwise fully and remove the spare wheel.

Storing the removed wheel

- Remove the floor covering.
- Place the removed wheel into the spare wheel well with the rim facing downwards and ensure that the central hole in the rim is positioned exactly above the hole in the wheel well.
- Turn the handwheel clockwise on the stud until the wheel is secured firmly.
- If necessary, place the vehicle toolkit back in the container in the luggage compartment.
- Put the floor covering back on the floor of the luggage compartment.
- Lift the luggage compartment back down.
- Close the tailgate.

If the spare wheel tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle

If the spare wheel is not the same as those mounted on the vehicle – for example if winter tyres or the temporary spare wheel are fitted – only use the spare wheel for a short period of time and drive with extra care ⇒⚠.

Refit the normal, functional road wheel as soon as possible.

Follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel ⇒ *Snow chains*.
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel ⇒ *Tyre pressure*.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel should be checked together with the normal tyres, at least once a month. The spare wheel should have the highest pressure allowed for the vehicle ⇒ *Tyre pressure*. The tyre pressure for the temporary spare wheel can be found on the sticker on the temporary spare wheel.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, to collisions or other accidents and cause serious injuries.

- **Never use a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.**
- **In some vehicles, the spare wheel could be smaller than the standard wheel. The small spare wheel has a sticker with the text 80 km/h or 50 mph. This is the maximum speed at which you are permitted to drive with this tyre.**
- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.**
- **Never drive further than 200 km with a temporary spare wheel if it is fitted to the drive axle.**
- **The temporary spare wheel should be exchanged for a normal wheel as soon as possible. The temporary spare wheel is designed for a short period of use only.**
- **The temporary spare wheel must always be secured firmly with the wheel bolts supplied by the factory.**
- **Never use more than one temporary spare wheel at a time.**
- **After fitting the temporary spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible ⇒ *Tyre pressure*.**
- **Snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.**

If possible, stow the spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment. In vehicles with a breakdown set, the removed wheel **cannot** be secured.

Tyre lettering

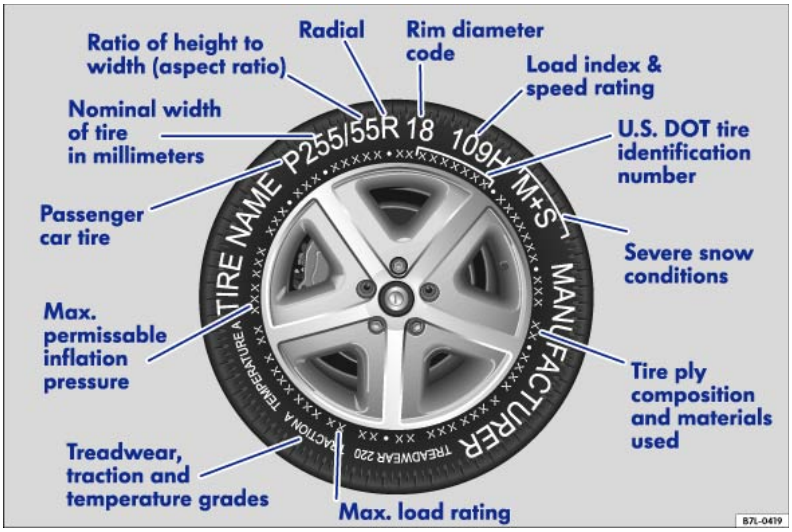


Fig. 134 International tyre lettering

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning
Brand name, *logo*	*Manufacturer*
Product name	Individual tyre lettering from manufacturer.
P215 / 55 R 18	Size designation: P Identification for passenger vehicle. 255 Tyre width from wall to wall in mm. 55 Height/width ratio in %. R Tyre construction: radial. 18 Rim diameter in inches.
109 H	Load capacity index ⇒ *Tyre load* and speed index ⇒ *Speed index*.
XL	Heavy-duty tyres (reinforced).
M+S *or* M/S *or*	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres) ⇒ *Winter tyres*.
RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyres.
E4 ...	Certification of conformity with international regulations. The number following (E) is the code number of the country that

Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning
DOT BT RA TY5 1709	granted approval. This is followed by the number of the type approval certificate. Tyre identification number (**TIN**[a] – may be on the inner side of the wheel) and manufacturer date: DOT – The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the USA Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards. BT – Code identifier of the factory that manufactured the tyre. RA – Tyre manufacturer's data on tyre size. TY5 – Manufacturer's tyre characteristics. 1709 – Manufacture date: 17th week in 2009.
TWI	Indicates the position of the tread wear indicator ⇒ *Tread depth and wear indicators*.
Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.
MAX LOAD 615 KG	US load data for the maximum load per wheel.
MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)	US limitation for the maximum air pressure.
SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Data on tyre sub-construction components: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk).
TREAD 4 PLIES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Data on the tread surface components: In the example there are four layers under the tread surface: 1 layer of rayon, 2 steel belt layers and 1 nylon layer.
Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure) ⇒ *Consumer information*:	
TREADWEAR 220	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, with reference to a US-specific standard test.
TRACTION A	Wet braking response of the tyre (AA, A, B or C).
TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at higher test speeds (A, B or C).
Any other characters are internal codes used by the tyre manufacturer or are country-specific codes, e.g. for Brazil or China.	

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in one direction only. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. The direction of rotation must be adhered to. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

Tyre load

The load capacity index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded onto an individual tyre (tyre load).

78425 kg81462 kg83487 kg85515 kg87545 kg91615 kg

Speed index

The speed index indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven when particular wheels are fitted.

Pmax. 150 km/h (93 mph)Qmax. 160 km/h (99 mph)Rmax. 170 km/h (106 mph)Smax. 180 km/h (112 mph)Tmax. 190 km/h (118 mph)Umax. 200 km/h (124 mph)Hmax. 210 km/h (130 mph)Vmax. 240 km/h (149 mph)Zover 240 km/h (149 mph)Wmax. 270 km/h (168 mph)Ymax. 300 km/h (186 mph)

Some tyre manufacturers use the code ZR for tyres with a highest permitted speed of over 240 km/h (149 mph).

[a] The TIN is the tyre serial number.

Winter tyres

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ ⚠

Introduction

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. Volkswagen urgently recommends the use of winter tyres or all-year tyres on all four wheels of the vehicle, particularly if winter conditions are expected on the roads. Winter tyres will also improve the braking response of the vehicle and will help to reduce braking distances in winter weather. Volkswagen recommends that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle at temperatures below +7°C (+45°F).

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Winter tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through **ageing** – regardless of the tread depth.

The following applies when using winter tyres:

- Observe any country-specific legal requirements.
- Use winter tyres on all four wheels at the same time.
- Only use in winter road conditions.
- Only use the sizes of winter tyre that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Winter tyres must have the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- Heed the maximum speed permitted by the speed index ⇒.

Speed limitation

Winter tyres have a speed limitation depending on the speed index ⇒ *Tyre lettering*.

In some vehicle versions, a speed warning can be set in the **MFD (multifunction display)** menu in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Volkswagen information system*.

If you use **V-rated tyres** the speed limits and required tyre pressure will be determined by the engine size. You must ask a Volkswagen dealership about the highest permitted speed and required tyre pressure.

WARNING

The improved winter driving characteristics afforded by the winter tyres should not encourage you to take any risks.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the winter tyres that are fitted.**

Summer tyres should be fitted in good time at the end of the winter. The vehicle handling is better if summer tyres are fitted at temperatures above +7°C (+45°F). They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Volkswagen dealerships can provide details on permissible winter tyre sizes.

Snow chains

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Please heed legislation and also the permitted speed when driving your vehicle with snow chains.

In winter conditions, snow chains will not only improve acceleration, but also braking response.

Snow chains may be fitted **only to the front wheels**. They may be fitted **only to the following tyre and wheel combinations:**

Tyre size	Wheel
165 / 70 R 14	5 J x 14 offset 35

Volkswagen recommends that you ask your Volkswagen dealership for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

If possible, use snow chains with fine-pitch links which do not protrude more than 15 mm, including the tensioner.

Remove wheel centre covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains ⇒. For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

Temporary spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the temporary spare wheel ⇒ *Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel*.

If you have to use snow chains with the temporary spare wheel fitted, the temporary spare wheel should be fitted to the rear axle even when a front wheel is damaged. You can then use the wheel taken from the rear axle to replace the damaged front wheel. Please note the direction of rotation. Volkswagen recommends fitting the snow chains before mounting the wheel on the car.

WARNING

The use of snow chains that are unsuitable for your vehicle or the incorrect installation of snow chains can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always use the correct snow chains.**
- **Follow the assembly instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for the snow chains that are fitted.**

NOTICE

- **Remove the snow chains when driving on roads that are free of snow. The snow chains will otherwise impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.**
- **Snow chains that are in direct contact with the wheel can scratch or damage it. Volkswagen recommends using non-scratch snow chains.**

Snow chains are available in a range of sizes for a vehicle type.

Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Running-in*
⇒ *Accessories and parts*
⇒ *Service fluids and consumables*
⇒ *Repairs and technical modifications*
⇒ *Repairs and faults in the airbag system*
⇒ *Retrofitting two-way radios*
⇒ *Information stored in the control units*
⇒ *Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial*
⇒ *Portable navigation device*
⇒ *Vehicle lifting points*

Additional information and warnings:

- Seat belts ⇒ *Seat belts*
- Airbag system ⇒ *Airbag system*
- Roof carrier ⇒ *Roof carrier*
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter ⇒ *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*
- Electrical socket ⇒ *Socket*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Pull-away assist systems ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- ParkPilot ⇒ *ParkPilot*
- Cruise Control System (CCS) ⇒ *Cruise control system (CCS)*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*
- Engine coolant ⇒ *Coolant*
- Battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*
- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Cleaning and caring for the interior ⇒ *Cleaning and caring for the interior*
- Consumer information ⇒ *Consumer information*
- ⇒Booklet*Radio*,
- User's manual for the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen)

WARNING

Unsuitable spare parts and accessories, incorrectly carried out work, modifications and repairs can lead to damage to the vehicle and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Volkswagen strongly recommends that you only use approved Volkswagen accessories and Volkswagen Genuine Parts. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety.**
- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **Never fit parts to your vehicle that are in any way different from the factory-fitted parts.**
- **Never secure or mount objects such as drink holders or telephone holders on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zone of the airbag.**
- **Only use rim/tyre combinations that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.**

Running-in

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Please follow the regulations concerning running-in new parts.

Running in a new engine

Any new engine has to be run in during the first 1,500 kilometres. During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

The style of driving during the first 1,500 kilometres will also affect the engine quality. Even after this time – and especially with a cold engine – drive the vehicle at moderate speeds in order to reduce engine wear and to increase the mileage that the engine can cover. Do not drive at engine speeds that are too low. Always shift down gear if the engine is not running smoothly. **The following applies up to 1,000 kilometres:**

- Do not depress the accelerator fully.
- Do not drive the vehicle at more than 2/3 of the top engine speed.

From 1,000 to 1,500 kilometres, *gradually* increase driving performance to top speed and highest engine speed.

Running in new tyres and brake pads

- New wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- Information on the brakes ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*

If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced.

Accessories and parts

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Volkswagen recommends that you seek advice from a Volkswagen dealership before purchasing accessories, spare parts or service fluids. For example, if the vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories or if parts have to be renewed. Volkswagen dealerships can recommend accessories, parts and service fluids suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

Volkswagen recommends that you only use approved **Volkswagen accessories** and **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. And Volkswagen dealerships are qualified to install them correctly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of products **Volkswagen has not approved**. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** that has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven must be approved by Volkswagen for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorization symbol). These devices include cruise control systems or an electronically controlled suspension.

Any **additional electrical components** fitted that do not serve to control the vehicle itself must bear the CE mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union). Such devices include refrigerator boxes, laptops and ventilator fans.

WARNING

Incorrectly performed repairs or modifications to your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the airbags, cause faults, accidents and fatal injury.

- **Never secure or mount objects such as drink holders or telephone holders either on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zones of the airbag modules.**
- **Objects either on or next to the airbag module covers or are in the deployment zone of the airbags can cause serious or even fatal injuries should the airbags be activated.**

Service fluids and consumables

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. toothed belts, tyres, coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and vehicle batteries, are being constantly developed. For this reason, service fluids and consumables should be replaced at a qualified workshop. A Volkswagen dealership is always kept up to date on innovations.

WARNING

Unsuitable service fluids and consumables, and the incorrect use of these fluids and consumables, can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- **Service fluids must be kept in their original sealed container.**
- **Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.**
- **Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.**
- **Always read and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.**
- **When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are toxic and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions.**

NOTICE

- **Only use suitable service fluids for refilling. Never use the wrong service fluid. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.**
- **Optional equipment and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. The engine may overheat at high ambient temperatures and high engine loads.**

Leaking service fluids can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected in suitable containers and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

Repairs and technical modifications

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications⇒.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause faults. As the electronic components are linked together in networks, these faults may indirectly affect the working of other systems. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate the type approval for the vehicle.

The Volkswagen dealership cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

The Volkswagen dealership cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly, nor are these covered by the Volkswagen guarantee.

Volkswagen recommends that all repairs and technical modifications are performed by an authorised Volkswagen dealership using **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**®.

Vehicles with special auxiliary equipment or body parts

The manufacturer of these components must ensure that these parts (fittings) adhere to the stipulated environmental laws and regulations, particularly the EU directive 2000/53/EC concerning end-of-life vehicles and EU directive 2003/11/EC concerning the restriction on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The vehicle owner should keep all assembly documentation for these auxiliary fittings, and pass it on to any scrapping company later engaged. In this way, environmentally compatible disposal should be guaranteed for all vehicles, including refitted vehicles.

Windscreen repairs

To function properly, some items of equipment require a camera or sensor, which is located on the inside of the windscreen near the interior mirror. If the windscreen in the viewing field of the camera or sensors has been damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the windscreen must be replaced. Repairing the crack can lead to malfunction or functional faults in the equipment.

After changing the windscreen, the camera and sensors must be set up and calibrated by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause functional problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.**

Repairs and faults in the airbag system

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications⇒.

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the roof, or the bodywork should be carried out by a qualified workshop. System components and airbag system sensors can be located on these vehicle components.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers could change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase. This can lead to the airbag system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications can cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease, therefore preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause function problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.**
- **Airbag modules cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.**
- **Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.**

WARNING

Modifications to the vehicle's suspension, including the use of unsuitable tyre/rim combinations, can cause the airbag system to work differently and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- **Never install any components in the suspension system that do not have the same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.**
- **Never use tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.**

Retrofitting two-way radios

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

You will need an external aerial to use a two-way radio in the vehicle.

Any retrofit installation of electrical or electronic equipment in the vehicle will affect its vehicle type approval. Under certain circumstances, this can negate the type approval for the vehicle.

Volkswagen has approved the vehicle for use with two-way radios subject to the following conditions:

- Correct installation of external aerial.
- A maximum transmitting power of 10 watts.

An external aerial is needed to give the equipment its optimal range.

Check first with a qualified workshop if you wish to use a two-way radio with a transmitting power of over 10 watts. A qualified workshop is familiar with the technical options for retrofitting. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Please observe legislation and the instructions and information given in the operating manuals for radio equipment.

WARNING

If radio equipment is not secured or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This can cause injuries.

- **While the vehicle is in motion, always secure two-way radios properly outside the airbag deployment zones or stow them away safely.**

CAUTION

If two-way radios that are not connected to an external aerial are used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials that have not been correctly installed.

- **Two-way radios should only be used in the vehicle if an external aerial is properly connected.**

Information stored in the control units

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Your vehicle is factory fitted with electronic control units which are responsible for engine and gearbox management. The control units also monitor the function of the exhaust system and the airbags.

These electronic control units continuously evaluate data relevant to the vehicle while the vehicle is being driven. Only these data will be stored if there are any faults recorded or any deviations from the specified values. This is generally displayed by the indicator lamps on the instrument cluster.

Special units are required to read and evaluate data stored in the control units.

These data are stored so that specialist workshops can diagnose and solve problems. The following data may have been stored:

- Engine and gearbox-relevant data.
- Speed.
- Direction of travel.
- Braking power.
- Seat belt monitor.

The control units never record conversations that take place in the vehicle. It is neither possible nor permitted to use the stored data to create movement profiles.

When the vehicle is being used, situations may arise in which the stored data (alone or in conjunction with other information such as accident reports, vehicle damage, witness statements etc.) can become assignable to a particular person, in which case it may be necessary to consult an expert and use the expert's information.

In vehicles with an emergency call function via a mobile telephone or other units, the current location can be transmitted. In the event of an accident in which the control units register that an airbag has been triggered, the system can automatically send out a signal. This depends on your service provider. Transmission is possible only in areas with a sufficiently strong mobile telephone signal.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer, e.g. vehicle positioning in an emergency, allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from the vehicle.

Event data recorder

The vehicle is **not** fitted with an event data recorder.

Event data recorders temporarily store vehicle information. This provides precise information in the event of an accident. In vehicles with an airbag system, data that might be relevant in the event of an accident can be stored, e.g. impact speed, belt buckle status, seat positions and trigger speed. The scope of the data is manufacturer-specific.

An event data recorder may only be fitted if the owner has approved the procedure. This is covered by legislation in some countries.

Reprogramming control units

All data for the control of components are stored in the control units. Some convenience functions, such as lane change flash, single door unlocking and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If this is the case, the descriptions in your vehicle wallet will no longer correspond with the original functions. Volkswagen recommends that you have any reprogramming confirmed in the service schedule under Workshop comments.

Information about possible reprogramming can be obtained from the Volkswagen dealership.

Reading the vehicle's event memory

A diagnostic interface for reading the event memories is located in the vehicle interior ⇒⚠. Data relating to the function and status of the electronic control units are stored in the event memory. Additional information on the stored data is available from qualified workshops.

The diagnosis interface is located behind near the fuse box in the footwell on the driver side.

The event memory should only be read and reset by a qualified workshop.

After a fault has been rectified, the information in the memory pertaining to the fault is deleted. Other memory content is overwritten on an on-going basis.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the diagnostic interface can cause faults, which can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never read the event memory using the diagnostic interface yourself.**
- **The diagnostic interface should only be read by a qualified workshop.**

Using a mobile telephone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Both during telephone calls and in standby mode, mobile telephones transmit and receive radio waves, which may also be termed "high-frequency energy". Current scientific literature warns us that radio waves can be harmful to human beings if they exceed certain limits. Government bodies and international committees have introduced threshold values and guidelines to ensure that electromagnetic radiation produced by mobile telephones does not pose a hazard to health. However, there is no proven scientific evidence that demonstrates that cordless telephones are absolutely safe.

For this reason, some experts are calling for more precautions to be taken in the use of mobile telephones, by taking steps to reduce the level of personal exposure to electromagnetic radiation.

If a mobile telephone that is not connected to the vehicle's external aerial is used inside the vehicle, the level of electromagnetic radiation could be higher than when the mobile telephone is connected to an integrated aerial or any other external aerial.

If the vehicle is fitted with a suitable hands-free unit which enables the use of innumerable additional functions of Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephones, this will satisfy the legal requirements in many countries which permit the use of a mobile telephone in a vehicle only if a hands-free unit is used.

The hands-free system of the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) in your vehicle has been developed for mobile telephones that are compatible with Bluetooth® *⇒ Portable navigation device*. Mobile telephones must be located in a suitable telephone holder or be stored securely in the vehicle. If a telephone holder is used it must be securely attached to the base plate. This is the only way to ensure that the mobile telephone is securely attached to the dash panel and always within reach of the driver. Depending on the hands-free system, the connection between the mobile telephone and the external aerial is established either via the telephone holder or via an existing Bluetooth® connection between the mobile telephone and the vehicle.

Connecting the mobile telephone is to a telephone aerial integrated in the vehicle or to an external telephone aerial reduces the electromagnetic radiation generated by the telephone which could affect the human body. Using an aerial also improves the quality of the signal.

If a mobile telephone is used in the vehicle interior without this hands-free system, it is not safely secured in the vehicle and also not connected to the vehicle's external telephone aerial. Furthermore, the mobile telephone is not being charged in the telephone holder. It is also likely that the telephone connection will be disrupted and the signal strength will be poor.

A mobile telephone should only be used in the vehicle if it is connected to a hands-free unit. Volkswagen recommends the use of an external aerial when using a mobile telephone in the vehicle.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

WARNING

If a mobile telephone is not secured or is incorrectly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This can cause injuries.

- **Mobile telephones, other devices and accessories for the telephone such as telephone holders, note blocks or portable navigation devices must always be secured properly outside of the airbag deployment zones whilst the vehicle is in motion or be stored in a safe place.**

WARNING

If mobile telephones or two-way radios that are not connected to an external aerial are used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials that have not been correctly installed.

- **Keep mobile telephone aerials at least 20 cm away from pacemakers, as the telephones may affect their functioning.**
- **Do not carry a mobile telephone in your breast pocket above a pacemaker when the telephone is switched on or in standby mode.**
- **Switch off the mobile telephone immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with a pacemaker.**

Portable navigation device

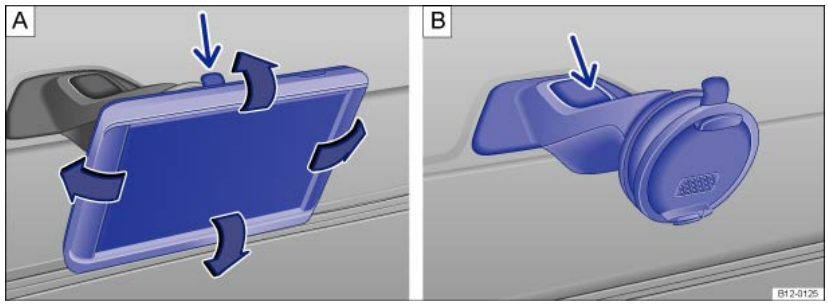


Fig. 135 In the centre console: removing the navigation device and mounting

Fig. 136 Central console: closing the opening the navigation device mounting

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

In some vehicles other vehicle functions and additional applications can be accessed via the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) ⇒.

The tilt and angle can be set by moving the navigation device as required ⇒ *Fig. 135***A**, ⇒.

The user's manual for the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) can be displayed on the unit itself.

Functions

In some vehicles the following functions are available in the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen):

- Extended multifunction display (MFD) with additional instruments ⇒ *Instruments*.
- Operation of a factory-fitted radio and a connected media player ⇒Booklet*Radio*,.

- Picture viewer.
- Navigation.
- Hands-free system for a mobile telephone via Bluetooth.
- Display for open doors or tailgate.
- ParkPilot ⇒ *ParkPilot*.
- Gear change indicator and driving style.
- Think-Blue-Trainer.
- Fuel warning.

Select user's manual for the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen)

- Switch on portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen).
- Touch the **more** function button on the screen.
- Press the **Handbook** function button.
- Select the required chapter and press the corresponding function button.

Removing the portable navigation device

- Use one hand to get a secure grip on the upper and lower edges of the portable navigation device.
- Press the release button ⇒ *Fig. 135* **A** (arrow) until the device can be removed from the holder.
- Remove the portable navigation device and stow it securely.
- Remove the portable navigation device holder if necessary.

Installing the portable navigation device

- Fit the portable navigation device holder if necessary ⇒⚠.
- Use one hand to get a secure grip on the upper and lower edges of the portable navigation device.
- Place the portable navigation device in the upper holder and push on the lower edge until it perceptibly engages ⇒⚠.

Removing the portable navigation device holder

- If necessary, remove the portable navigation device.
- With one hand, take a firm grip of the holder's supporting arm and press the release button ⇒ *Fig. 135* **B** (arrow).
- Pull the holder up out of the dash panel.
- If necessary, close the opening by attaching the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 136*.

Fitting the portable navigation device holder mounting

- If necessary, remove the cover for the holder mount in the opposite direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 136*.
- Insert the holder into the opening from above and push down until it perceptibly engages ⇒⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the portable navigation device can distract you from the road.

- **Always drive carefully and responsibly.**
- **Select volume settings that allow signals from outside the vehicle to be easily heard at all times (e.g. emergency service sirens).**
- **Setting the volume too high may damage your hearing. This also applies even if you are only exposed to high volumes for short periods.**

⚠ WARNING

Driving recommendations and traffic symbols displayed by the navigation system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- **Traffic signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**

WARNING

If the portable navigation device is not secured or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This could cause injuries.

- **The holder for the portable navigation device must be installed securely in the corresponding opening in the dash panel.**
- **The portable navigation device must always be fitted securely in the holder or stowed safely in the vehicle.**

NOTICE

Incorrect settings for the tilt and angle could damage the portable navigation device.

- **When positioning the portable navigation device, proceed with caution and do not move further than the end stop.**

NOTICE

Very high or very low outside temperatures could influence the function of the portable navigation device or could even damage the device.

- **Always take the portable navigation device with you when leaving the vehicle in order to protect it from very high or from very low temperatures or from strong direct sunlight.**

NOTICE

Dampness could damage the electrical contacts in the dash panel for the portable navigation device.

- **Do not clean the holder for the portable navigation device with water. A dry cloth should be used.**

Volkswagen recommends that you take the portable navigation device with you when leaving the vehicle to prevent it being stolen.

Vehicle lifting points

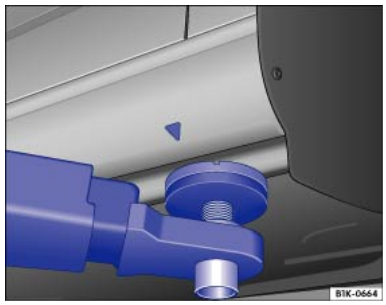


Fig. 137 Lifting points at front for the lifting platform or vehicle jack

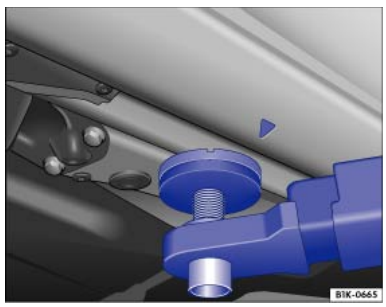


Fig. 138 Lifting points at rear for the lifting platform or vehicle jack

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The vehicle may only be lifted at the points shown in the illustrations ⇒ *Fig. 137* and ⇒ *Fig. 138*. If the vehicle is not raised on the lifting points shown, the vehicle could be damaged ⇒. There is also a risk of serious injury ⇒.

Lifting platforms with fluid filled cushions (receiving platforms) may not be used for lifting the vehicle.

There are many precautions that have to be followed when lifting a vehicle on a workshop hoist or floor jack. Do not try to lift a vehicle on a lifting platform or vehicle jack unless you have the training, knowledge and experience to be able to do so safely.

Using the jack to lift the vehicle ⇒ *Changing a wheel*.

WARNING

Lifting your vehicle incorrectly with a lifting platform or vehicle jack can cause accidents and serious personal injury:

- **Always read and heed the operating instructions from the lifting platform or vehicle jack manufacturer and any legal regulations before lifting the vehicle.**
- **All occupants should leave the vehicle before it is lifted.**
- **The vehicle should only be lifted at the points indicated in the illustrations ⇒ *Fig. 137* and ⇒ *Fig. 138*. If the vehicle is not lifted at the points shown, it could fall off the lifting platform when work is carried out, e.g. when the engine or gearbox is removed.**
- **The vehicle jacking points must be placed on the centre of the vehicle lift support surfaces, with as much surface contact between the vehicle and the support surfaces as possible.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. The vibration of the engine could cause the vehicle to fall off the lifting point.**
- **If work has to be carried out underneath the lifted vehicle, secure the vehicle with suitable jack stands with a sufficient load-bearing capacity.**
- **Never climb up the lifting platform.**
- **Always ensure that the vehicle is not heavier than the lifting capacity of the lifting platform.**

NOTICE

- **Never lift the vehicle by the engine oil sump, the gearbox or the front or rear axle.**
- **To prevent damage to the underside of the vehicle when lifting, rubber pads must be used. Ensure that the lifting platform arms are able to move freely.**
- **The lifting platform arms must not be allowed to come into contact with the sills or any other part of the vehicle.**

Consumer information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Information stickers and plates*
⇒ *Using the vehicle in other countries and continents*
⇒ *Radio reception and aerials*
⇒ *Volkswagen repair information*
⇒ *Declaration of conformity*
⇒ *Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres*
⇒ *Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles*

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Pull-away assist systems ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- ⇒Booklet*Service schedule*,

WARNING

Handling the vehicle incorrectly will increase the risk of accident and injuries.

- **Comply with legal regulations.**
- **Observe the owner's manual.**

NOTICE

Handling the vehicle incorrectly could lead to the vehicle becoming damaged.

- **Comply with legal regulations.**
- **Carry out service jobs in accordance with the service schedule.**
- **Observe the owner's manual.**

Information stickers and plates

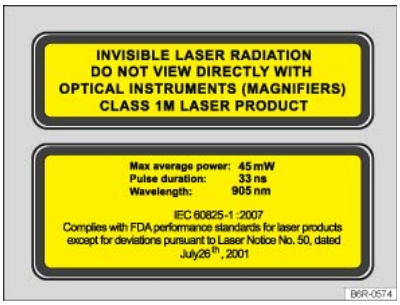


Fig. 139 Warnings for using the laser sensor in the city emergency brake function

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Safety certificates, stickers and plates showing important vehicle operation information are factory-fitted in the engine compartment and on certain parts such as the tank flap, front passenger sun visor, the driver door pillar or in the luggage compartment floor.

- Never remove or damage the safety certificates, stickers and plates. They must remain legible at all times.
- If vehicle parts bearing safety certificates, stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement safety certificates, stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the new parts by the qualified workshop.

Safety certificate

A safety certificate on the door pillar of the driver door provides the information that all necessary safety standards and specifications of the transport safety authorities of the individual country have been met at the time of production. The month and year of production and the chassis number may also be listed.

High voltage warning sticker

There is a sticker near the bonnet lock showing a warning about the high voltage in the vehicle's electrical system.

Warning for using the laser sensor in the City emergency brake function

The signs with warnings and information for using the laser sensor of the city emergency brake function can be seen ⇒ *Fig. 139*.

Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The vehicle has been manufactured specifically for a particular country and complies with the registration regulations that applied in that country at the time of vehicle production.

If the vehicle is to be sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The scope and type of service available may also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climate for a long period of time.

Because different frequency bands are used in different countries, the factory-fitted radio or the portable navigation device (delivered by Volkswagen) may not work in other countries.

NOTICE

- **Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of Genuine Parts.**
- **Volkswagen cannot be held responsible if the vehicle does not comply with or only partly complies with the relevant legal requirements in other countries and continents.**

Radio reception and aerials

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The aerial for radio signal reception is fitted on the vehicle roof for factory-fitted radio units.

Interference with AM radio reception could occur if electric devices, e.g. mobile telephones, are used in the vicinity of the roof aerial.

Volkswagen repair information

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Volkswagen Service information and official Volkswagen repair information can be purchased from the following addresses:

Customers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, Central and South America

Please contact a Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop or order the literature you require from www.erwin.volkswagen.de.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause functional problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems and the airbag systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.**

Declaration of conformity

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The individual manufacturer declares herewith that the following products conform, at the time of vehicle production, with the basic requirements and other relevant laws and regulations, including FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

Radio-based equipment

- Electronic immobilizer.
- Vehicle key.

Electrical equipment

- 12-volt socket.

India

Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Tyres fitted in the vehicle meet the requirement of BIS and comply with the requirements under the Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR), 1989.

Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Recycling end-of-life vehicles

Volkswagen has already made provision for you to recycle your vehicle in an environmentally-friendly manner. The recycling system operating in many European countries will take back your vehicle at the end of its useful life. Once the vehicle has been recycled, a certificate of destruction will be issued to show that the vehicle has been disposed of correctly.

End-of-life vehicles are recycled free of charge, provided that national legislation is complied with.

Further information on the recycling of end-of-life vehicles can be found at a Volkswagen dealership.

Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag and the belt tensioners are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Engine management system and exhaust purification system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ Indicator lamps

⇒ *Catalytic converter*

Additional information and warnings:

- Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Filling the tank ⇒ *Filling the tank*
- Fuel ⇒ *Fuel*
- Engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*
- Battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*
- Information stored in the control units ⇒ *Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts*
- Tow-starting and towing ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- **Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.**
- **Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields.**

Indicator lamps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
EPC	Engine management system fault (Electronic Power Control).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Fault in catalytic converter.	Decrease speed. Drive carefully to the next qualified workshop. The engine should be checked.

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Misfiring, which damages the catalytic converter.	Decrease speed. Drive carefully to the next qualified workshop. The engine should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out soon afterwards.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.

If the indicator lamps or EPC are lit up, fuel consumption may be higher, and engine performance reduced.

Catalytic converter

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The catalytic converter is used for exhaust gas post-treatment and helps to reduce exhaust emissions. To help ensure long-term functionality in the exhaust system and the catalytic converter:

- Use unleaded petrol only.
- Do not allow the fuel tank to run empty.
- Do not overfill engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle. Use jump leads ⇒ *Starting the engine with jump leads*.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately. The vehicle should be inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel being used.

If and when

Practical tips

Frequently asked questions

If you suspect that there is a fault in the vehicle or if your vehicle has been damaged, read and observe the following information **before** contacting a Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop. You may also find useful information in the index under the headings Things to note or Checklist.

Irregularity	Some possible causes	Possible solution
Engine does not start.	Vehicle battery is discharged.	– Jump start the engine ⇒ *Starting the engine with jump leads*. – Recharge the vehicle battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
	An incorrect vehicle key is being used.	Use a valid vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
	The fuel level is too low.	Fill the tank ⇒ *Filling the tank*.
Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked with the vehicle key.	– The battery in the vehicle key is discharged. – The vehicle key is too far away from the vehicle.	– Replace battery ⇒ *Vehicle key set*. – Move closer to the vehicle. – Synchronise vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*. – Unlock or lock vehicle manually ⇒ *Manual opening and closing*.
Unusual noises.	Cold engine, brake assist systems, electronic steering column lock, auxiliary heater, filling up with natural gas.	Refer to the index under entries for Noises.
Unusual handling.	Assist systems are active.	Refer to the index under entries for Assist systems.
	An incorrect tyre pressure is being used.	Check tyre pressure ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*.
	Damage to the tyre or wheel.	Check the rims and tyres regularly for damage ⇒ *Wheels and tyres* and replace as necessary ⇒ *Changing a wheel*.
The vehicle has no vehicle jack, spare wheel or breakdown set.	Equipment depends on type of vehicle.	No direct solutions possible as it depends on the equipment level. Contact a Volkswagen dealership if necessary ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*.
The road ahead is not lit up properly.	– Headlight has been masked for driving on the left or on the right. – Headlight not adjusted correctly. – Bulbs have failed. – Dipped beam headlight not switched on.	– Mask the headlights accordingly for driving on the left or right ⇒ *Lights*. – Adjust headlight range ⇒ *Lights*. – Change bulbs ⇒ *Changing bulbs*. – Switch dipped headlights on ⇒ *Lights*.
Electrical consumers not working.	Low vehicle battery charge.	Recharge vehicle battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
	Low fuel level.	Fill the tank ⇒ *Filling the tank*.
	Fuse blown.	Check fuse and replace as necessary ⇒ *Fuses*.
Fuel consumption is higher than indicated.	– Short distances driven. – Uneven acceleration.	– Avoid driving short distances. – Think ahead when driving. – Accelerate evenly.
	An electrical consumer is switched on.	Switch off all consumers that are not needed.
	Fault in engine management system.	Have the fault rectified ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system*.
	Tyre pressure too low.	Adjust the tyre pressure ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*.
	Driving in hilly regions.	No direct solutions possible.
	Driving with a heavy load.	No direct solutions possible.
	Driving at high engine speed.	Select a high gear.

In an emergency

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Making you and your vehicle safe*

⇒ *First aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher*

Additional information and warnings:

- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Manual opening and closing ⇒ *Manual opening and closing*
- Vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*
- Changing a wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel*

WARNING

Broken-down vehicles increase the risk of accidents in road traffic – both for you and other road users.

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to lock all doors securely in an emergency. Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that they are locked in the vehicle in an emergency. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.**

Making you and your vehicle safe

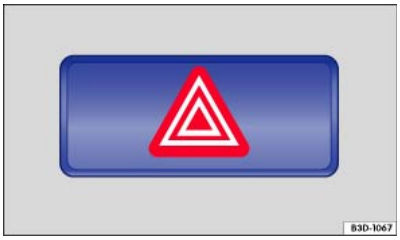


Fig. 140 In the upper part of the centre console: button for switching the hazard warning lights on and off

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of broken-down vehicles. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights and wear a high-visibility waistcoat ⇒ *First aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher*.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and that of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order ⇒:

- ✓ Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface .
- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights using the button .
- ✓ Apply the handbrake firmly Braking, stopping and parking.
- ✓ Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to N Changing gear.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition .
- ✓ Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle away from moving traffic and proceed to a safe position, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- ✓ Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
- ✓ Allow the engine to cool down and, if necessary, seek expert assistance.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on, for example if you are being towed, you can still indicate a change in direction or lane change by operating the turn signal. The warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

Switch on the hazard warning lights:

- When traffic ahead suddenly starts moving more slowly or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam, to will warn vehicles behind you.
- When there is an emergency.
- When the vehicle breaks down.
- When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- **Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.**

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- **Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.**

The vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – even when the ignition is switched off.

If you brake hard at speeds over approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake lights will flash to warn the traffic behind. If you then continue to brake, the hazard warning lights will be switched on automatically at speeds under approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). The brake light will light up continuously. Once the vehicle starts to accelerate, the hazard warning lights will switch off again.

First aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher

Fig. 141 In the luggage compartment: warning triangle stowage compartment under the floor covering

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Warning triangle

In some vehicle models, a warning triangle like the one shown may be stowed in a compartment in the luggage compartment under the floor covering *⇒ Fig. 141*.

First aid kit

The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements. Comply with the expiry dates of the contents.

Fire extinguisher

A **fire extinguisher** may be located in a holder in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must comply with the valid legal requirements. It must be fully functional and checked regularly. See the test certificate on the fire extinguisher.

WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects can be flung though the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- **Always secure or stow the fire extinguisher, high-visibility waistcoat, first aid kit and warning triangle safely in the vehicle.**

Manual opening and closing

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ Locking or unlocking the driver door and front passenger door manually

⇒ Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually

⇒ Unlocking the tailgate manually

If the vehicle key or central locking system fails, the doors and tailgate can be locked and, to a certain extent, unlocked manually.

Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set ⇒ *Vehicle key set*
- Central locking system ⇒ *Central locking system*
- Doors ⇒ *Doors*
- Tailgate ⇒ *Tailgate*
- In an emergency ⇒ *In an emergency*

WARNING

Careless manual opening and closing can cause serious injury.

- **When the car has been locked from the outside, the doors and electric windows cannot be opened from the inside.**
- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.**
- **Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.**

WARNING

The opening/closing paths of the doors and tailgate are potential danger areas where injury can occur.

- **Doors and tailgate should therefore only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.**

NOTICE

When carrying out manual opening or closing remove and install parts carefully in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Locking or unlocking the driver door and front passenger door manually

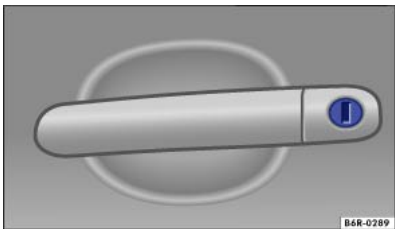


Fig. 142 Door handle on driver door with lock cylinder

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

If locked manually, all doors are locked. If unlocked manually, only the driver door or the passenger door is unlocked.

- Fold the key bit out of the vehicle key if necessary ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the key bit into the lock cylinder and lock or unlock the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 142*.

Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually

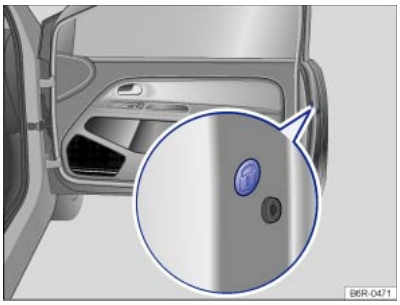


Fig. 143 In end face of the front passenger door: manual lock covered by a rubber seal

Fig. 144 Manually locking the vehicle with the vehicle key

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The front passenger door and the rear doors can be locked manually.

- Open the door.
- If necessary, remove the rubber seal from the end face of the door. The seal is marked with a lock symbol ⇒ *Fig. 143*.
- Fold the key bit out of the vehicle key if necessary ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the key bit into the slit in the opening and turn it clockwise as far as it will go ⇒ *Fig. 144*.
- If necessary, put the rubber seal back in place and close the door fully.
- Ensure that the door is locked.
- If required, repeat the process for the other doors.
- The vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle. You may have to pull the door release lever twice ⇒ *Central locking system*.

Unlocking the tailgate manually

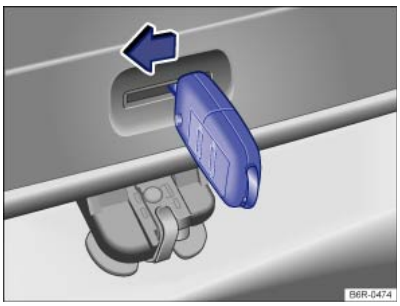


Fig. 145 Inside the luggage compartment: unlocking the tailgate manually

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

- If necessary, fold the backrest of the rear bench seat forwards ⇒ *Seat functions*.
- Remove items of luggage so that you can reach the tailgate from the inside.
- Fold the key bit out of the vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the key bit into the opening in the tailgate ⇒ *Fig. 145* and push the release lever in the direction of the arrow to unlock the tailgate.

Vehicle toolkit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Stowage*
⇒ *Contents*

Observe any country-specific legislation when securing your vehicle in the event of a breakdown.

Vehicle tools in the vehicle

In vehicles factory-fitted with a spare wheel, emergency spare wheel or winter wheels, additional vehicle tools may be located in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Stowage*.

Additional information and warnings:

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- In an emergency ⇒ *In an emergency*
- Changing a wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel*
- Breakdown set ⇒ *Breakdown set*

WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose vehicle toolkit, breakdown set and spare wheel could be flung though the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- **Always ensure that the vehicle toolkit, breakdown set and spare wheel or temporary spare wheel are secured in the luggage compartment.**

WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tools in the vehicle toolkit can lead to accidents and injuries.

- **Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle toolkit.**

Stowage

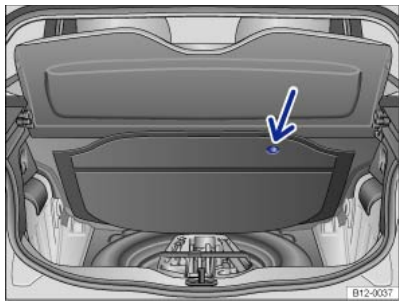


Fig. 146 In the luggage compartment: floor covering held in upright position

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The vehicle tools, spare wheel, emergency spare wheel or breakdown set are located in the luggage compartment under the floor covering ⇒ *Fig. 146*.

- If necessary, remove the variable luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Luggage compartment*.
- Lift the floor covering at the recess (arrow) ⇒ *Fig. 146*.

After using the vehicle jack, crank it back to its original position so that it can be stored safely.

Contents

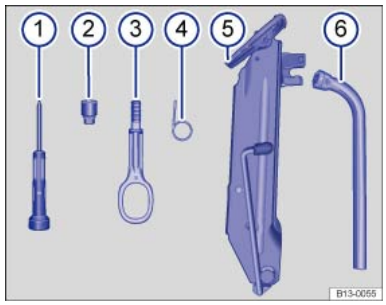


Fig. 147 Contents of the vehicle toolkit

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The content of the vehicle toolkit depends on the vehicle equipment level. The following describes the maximum scope.

The vehicle toolkit contains the following⇒ *Fig. 147*

(1) Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle for slackened wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible. The screwdriver may be located under the box spanner.

(2) Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts. Volkswagen recommends that you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle toolkit at all times. The **code number** of the anti-theft wheel bolt is engraved on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if lost. Make a note of the code number for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – but not inside the vehicle.

(3) Removable towing eye.

(4) Wire hook for pulling off the centre cover, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps.

(5) Vehicle jack. Before you return the vehicle jack to the toolbox, fully wind in the claw. To stow the vehicle jack securely the crank lever must be braced against the side of the jack.

(6) Box spanner for wheel bolts.

Vehicles with a natural gas engine

In vehicles with natural gas engines delivered with a second wheel set, the toolkit is kept in a seperate bag. Volkswagen recommends not keeping the bag in the vehicle all the time but only when it is necessary for changing to winter or summer tyres.

Hubcaps

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Centre cover*

⇒ *Wheel cover*

⇒ *Wheel bolt caps*

Additional information and warnings:

- Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior ⇒ *Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior*
- Vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*
- Changing a wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel*
- Breakdown set ⇒ *Breakdown set*

WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps, or fitting them incorrectly, can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.**
- **Do not use damaged hubcaps.**
- **Always ensure that the airflow to cool the brakes is not restricted or reduced. This also applies if hubcaps are retrofitted. If the airflow is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.**

NOTICE

Remove the hubcaps carefully and fit them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Centre cover

Fig. 148 Pulling off the centre cover on an alloy wheel

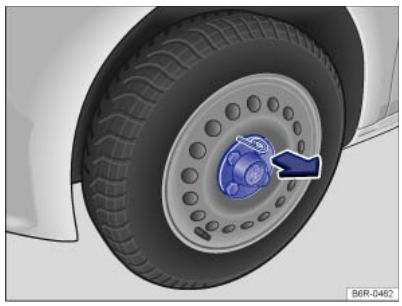


Fig. 149 Pulling off the centre cover on a steel wheel

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The centre cover has to be pulled off to gain access to the wheel bolts.

Removing and installing the centre cover

- *To remove*: take the wire hook from the toolkit and insert it in a hole (alloy wheel) or into an edge on the cover (steel wheel) ⇒ *Fig. 148* or ⇒ *Fig. 149*.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- *To replace*: press the centre cover against the rim until you feel it engage.

The centre cover protects the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

Wheel cover

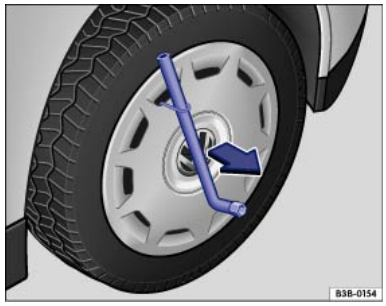


Fig. 150 Removing the wheel covers

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Removing the wheel covers

- Take the box spanner and wire hook from the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*.
- Insert the wire hook into one of the holes in the wheel cover.
- Push the box spanner through the wire hook ⇒ *Fig. 150* and remove the wheel cover in the direction of the arrow.

Fitting the wheel covers

The wheel covers must be pushed on to the rims with the hole for the valve aligned with the valve. When fitting the wheel cover, ensure that it engages securely on the entire circumference. If using an anti-theft wheel bolt, insert the bolt in the position opposite the valve.

Wheel bolt caps

Fig. 151 Removing the wheel bolt caps

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

- Take the wire hook from the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*.
- Insert the hook through the opening in the cap ⇒ *Fig. 151* and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a separate cap. It only fits onto the anti-theft wheel bolts and not onto conventional wheel bolts.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Preparation for changing a wheel*

⇒ *Wheel bolts*

⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the jack*
⇒ *Changing a wheel*
⇒ *After changing a wheel*

Some models are delivered without a factory-fitted jack or box spanner. If this is the case, the wheel should be changed by a qualified workshop.

The vehicle jack supplied with the vehicle is only designed for changing a wheel when one vehicle tyre is damaged and has to be replaced. Seek expert assistance if both tyres on one side of the vehicle, both tyres on one axle, or all tyres are damaged.

Only change the wheel yourself when the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary steps and safety procedures and you have access to all the correct tools. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Vehicle key set ⇒ *Vehicle key set*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- In an emergency ⇒ *In an emergency*
- Vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*
- Hubcaps ⇒ *Hubcaps*

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel can be dangerous, especially when carried out at the side of a road. Please note the following steps in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to carry out the wheel change.**
- **All passengers and children in particular must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work during the wheel change.**
- **Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **The ground should be firm and level. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.**
- **Only change the wheel yourself if you feel confident carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.**
- **Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.**
- **Always switch off the engine, firmly apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to D or R with the ignition switched on, or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.**
- **The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.**

Preparation for changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel ⇒⚠:

- ✓ In the event of a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Apply the handbrake firmly Braking, stopping and parking.
- ✓ With an automated manual gearbox, move the selector lever to D or R with the ignition on Changing gear.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Changing gear.
- ✓ Ensure that all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and proceed to a safe position, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Chock the wheel opposite the wheel being worked on with a stone or a similar object.
- ✓ Remove any items of luggage in the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Remove the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel and vehicle toolkit from the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Remove the hubcaps Hubcaps.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- **Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.**

Wheel bolts

Fig. 152 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

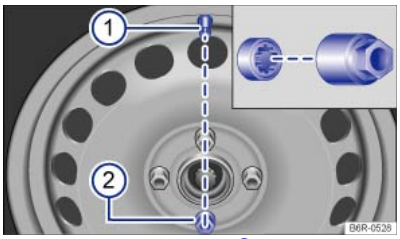


Fig. 153 Changing wheel: tyre valve ① and location of the anti-theft wheel bolt ②

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Only the spanner delivered with the vehicle should be used to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go ⇒ *Fig. 152*.
- Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn anticlockwise ⇒⚠.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

The anti-theft wheel bolt must be bolted into position ⇒ *Fig. 153②* on wheels with a wheel cover. Otherwise, it will not be possible to fit the wheel cover.

- Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle toolkit.
- Insert the adapter into the anti-theft wheel bolt ⇒ *Fig. 153*. Push it in as far as it will go.
- Insert the box spanner into the adapter as far as it will go.
- Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn anticlockwise ⇒⚠.

Important information about the wheel bolts

The design of the wheel rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-fitted wheels. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly.

In certain circumstances, wheel bolts from a vehicle of the same model series may not be used.

Tightening torque for the wheel bolts

The tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **110 Nm**. The tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced and the wheel hub threads cleaned **before the tightening torque is checked**.

Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

WARNING

Incorrectly tightened wheel bolts can loosen while the vehicle is in motion and cause accidents, serious injury, and loss of control of the vehicle.

- **Only use wheel bolts that belong to the wheel.**
- **Never use different wheel bolts.**
- **The wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs must be clean, free from oil and grease, and turn easily.**
- **Always use the box spanner placed in the vehicle at the factory to loosen and tighten the wheel bolts.**
- **Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.**
- **Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.**
- **Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and rims can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and threads can be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.**

Lifting the vehicle with the jack

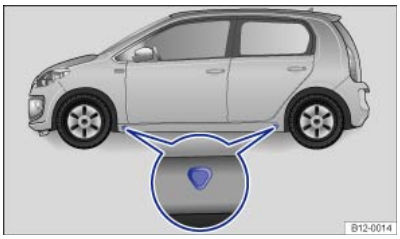


Fig. 154 Jacking points for the vehicle jack (mirrored on the right-hand side of the vehicle)

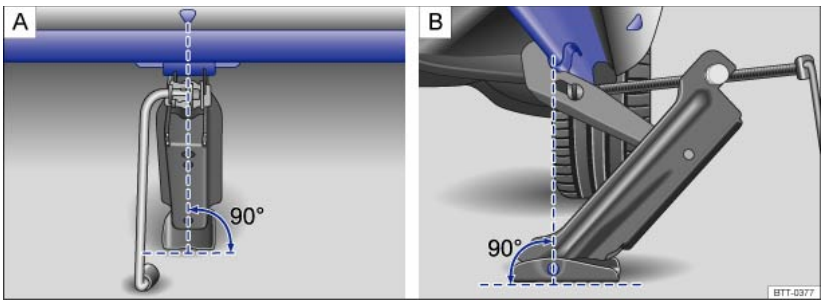


Fig. 155 Vehicle jack at the rear left-hand side of the vehicle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠
Introduction

The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown (markings on the body) ⇒ *Fig. 154*.
Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel you are working on ⇒⚠.

Raise the vehicle using only the designated jacking points.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and that of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order ⇒⚠:

✓ Find a firm and level surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.

✓ Stop the engine, select a gear on a manual gearbox or with an automated manual gearbox, move the selector lever to D or R with the ignition switched onChanging gear then apply the handbrake firmly Braking, stopping and parking.

✓ Chock the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable objects.

✓ Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed Wheel bolts.

✓ Find the jacking point under the vehicle which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.

✓ Raise the vehicle jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.

✓ Ensure that the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground with its whole surface and that the foot of the jack is positioned precisely, i.e. vertically beneath the point of application .

✓ Position the vehicle jack. At the same time, continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle .

✓ Crank the vehicle jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack, which can lead to severe injuries. Please note the following to help reduce the risk of injuries:

- **Only use vehicle jacks that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Other vehicle jacks could slip out of position – this includes vehicle jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.**
- **The ground must be firm and level. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.**
- **On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the vehicle jack from slipping.**
- **Fit the vehicle jack only at the points described. The vehicle jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the door sill securely ⇒ *Fig. 155*.**
- **Never place any part of your body (e.g. an arm or leg) underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the vehicle jack.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.**
- **Never lift the vehicle when the engine is running, or if the vehicle is tilted to the side or on a gradient.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a vehicle jack. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.**

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- **Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.**

Changing a wheel

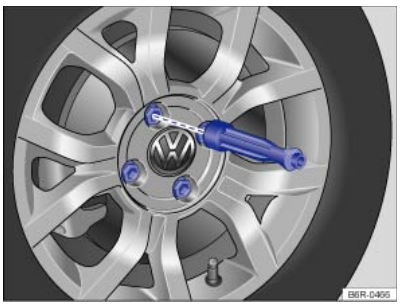


Fig. 156 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolts with the screwdriver handle

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Removing the wheel

- Read the checklist ⇒ *Preparation for changing a wheel*.
- Loosen the wheel bolts ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.
- Jack up the vehicle ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the jack*.
- Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle ⇒ *Fig. 156*, unscrew the loosened wheel bolts, remove and place on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

Fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

Note any specific tyre running direction ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*.

- Position the spare wheel / temporary spare wheel.
- Screw in the wheel bolts in a clockwise direction and use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten them *gently*.
- Use the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts where appropriate.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the box spanner to tighten all the wheel bolts securely in a clockwise direction ⇒⚠. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anticlockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
- Fit the cover caps, centre covers or wheel covers ⇒ *Hubcaps*.

WARNING

Incorrect torque or incorrect use of wheel bolts can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always keep all wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs clean and free from oil and grease. The wheel bolts must be easy to turn and be tightened to the specified torque.**
- **The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle should only be used for turning wheel bolts, not use for loosening or tightening them.**

After changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

- Clean the tools as necessary and place them back in the foam rubber holder in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*.
- Stow the spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment.
- The tightening torque of the wheel bolts should be checked immediately with a torque wrench ⇒ *Tightening torque for the wheel bolts*.
- The damaged wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.

Breakdown set

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Contents of the breakdown set*

⇒ *Preparation*

⇒ *Sealing and inflating tyres*

⇒ *Test after driving for 10 minutes*

You can use the breakdown set (tyre mobility set) to safely seal any tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or punctures (up to **4 mm** in diameter). **Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre!**

Once the sealant has been added to the tyre, the tyre pressure must be checked again after approximately 10 minutes of driving.

Seek expert assistance if more than one vehicle tyre is damaged. The breakdown set is only designed for filling one tyre.

Only use the breakdown set if the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the required actions and safety procedures, and you have access to the correct breakdown set. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

The tyre sealant must not be used:

- If the rim is damaged.
- If the outside temperature is below -20°C (-4°F).
- If there are cuts or punctures in the tyre that are larger than 4 mm.
- If the tyre pressure is very low or the tyres are flat.
- If the use-by date on the tyre filler bottle has expired.
- If a foreign object has been removed from the tyre.

Additional information and warnings:

- Vehicle key set ⇒ *Vehicle key set*
- Braking, stopping and parking ⇒ *Braking, stopping and parking*
- Wheels and tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- In an emergency ⇒ *In an emergency*
- Hubcaps ⇒ *Hubcaps*

WARNING

Using the breakdown set can be dangerous, especially if the tyres are inflated at the roadside. Please note the following steps in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to fill the tyre.**
- **Ensure that the ground is firm and level.**
- **All passengers, and children in particular, must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work.**
- **Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **The breakdown set should only be used if you feel confident with carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.**
- **Tyres repaired with the breakdown set are intended for temporary, emergency use only. They should only be used until you can reach the nearest qualified workshop.**
- **Tyres that have been repaired using the breakdown set should be replaced as soon as possible.**
- **Sealant is hazardous to health and must be washed off immediately if it gets onto the skin.**
- **The breakdown set must be stored out of the reach of children.**
- **Never use a vehicle jack, even if it is approved for the vehicle.**
- **Always switch off the engine, firmly apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to D or R with the ignition switched on, or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.**

WARNING

Tyres that have been filled with sealant will not handle in the same way as a standard tyre.

- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.**
- **Drive for just 10 minutes at no more than 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.**

Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with legal requirements.

You can get a new tyre filler bottle from a Volkswagen dealership.

Observe the separate instructions from the manufacturer of the breakdown set.

Contents of the breakdown set

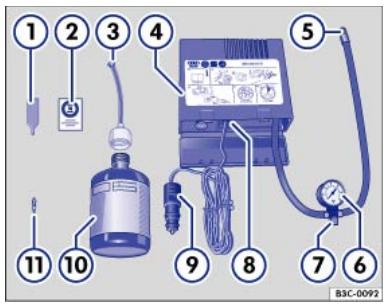


Fig. 157 The breakdown set

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The breakdown set may be located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It includes the following components ⇒ *Fig. 157*:

1. Valve core extractor
2. Sticker with the maximum permitted speed max. 80 km/h or max. 50 mph
3. Filler hose with plug
4. Air compressor
5. Tyre filler hose
6. Tyre pressure display[1)]
7. Air bleed screw[2)]
8. ON and OFF switch

9 12-volt plug

10 Tyre filler bottle with sealant [1)]

11 Spare valve core

There is a slot on the lower end of the **valve core extractor** ① for the valve core. This is required for extracting and fitting the tyre valve. This also applies to the spare valve core ⑪.

[1)] Could also be integrated in the compressor.

[2)] This function may be carried out by a button in the compressor instead.

Preparation

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for filling a tyre ⇒⚠:

- ✓ If you get a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Apply the handbrake firmly Braking, stopping and parking.
- ✓ With an automated manual gearbox, move the selector lever to D or R with the ignition on Changing gear.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Changing gear.
- ✓ Ensure that all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and proceed to a safe position, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights and position the warning triangle In an emergency. Observe any legal requirements.
- ✓ Check whether the puncture can be repaired with the breakdown set The tyre sealant must not be used:.
- ✓ Remove any items of luggage in the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Take the breakdown set out of the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Take the sticker ② from the breakdown set and stick it on the dash panel within the driver's field of vision.
- ✓ Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- **Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.**

Sealing and inflating tyres

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Sealing a tyre

- Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
- Use the valve core extractor ⇒ *Fig. 157①* to screw the valve core out of the tyre valve. Place the core on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre filler bottle ⇒ *Fig. 157⑩* vigorously up and down several times.
- Screw the filler hose ⇒ *Fig. 157③* tightly onto the tyre filler bottle in a clockwise direction. The plastic foil on the plug is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the filler hose ⇒ *Fig. 157③* and place the open end fully on the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle upside down and inject the **entire** contents of the tyre filler bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre filler bottle from the valve.
- Use the valve core extractor ⇒ *Fig. 157①* to screw the valve core back onto the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the tyre filler hose ⇒ *Fig. 157⑥* of the air compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the bleed screw ⇒ *Fig. 157⑦* is closed.
- Start the engine and let it run.

- Insert the plug ⇒ *Fig. 157⓪* into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets ⇒ *Socket*.
- Use the on/off switch ⇒ *Fig. 157⓪* to switch on the air compressor.
- Run the compressor until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) ⇒⚠. **The maximum running time is 8 minutes**⇒ⓘ.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If a pressure level of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) **cannot be achieved** unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive (or reverse) the vehicle approximately 10 metres so that the sealing compound is more evenly distributed in the tyre.
- Screw the tyre filler hose for the air compressor firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
- If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance ⇒⚠.
- Disconnect the air compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle no faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for **10 minutes**⇒ *Test after driving for 10 minutes*.

⚠ WARNING

The tyre filler hose and the air compressor can get hot during inflation.

- **Protect your hands and skin from the hot components.**
- **Do not place the hot tyre filler hose or the hot air compressor on any inflammable materials.**
- **Allow the device to cool down fully before stowing.**
- **If the tyre will not inflate to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too damaged. The sealant is unable to seal the tyre. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.**

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Switch the air compressor off after a maximum of 8 minutes to avoid overheating. Let the air compressor cool down for a few minutes before switching it back on.

Test after driving for 10 minutes

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Reconnect the tyre filler hose ⇒ *Fig. 157⑤* and check the tyre pressure on the tyre pressure display ⑥.

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

- **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set.
- Seek expert assistance ⇒⚠.

1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*.
- Resume your journey to the nearest qualified workshop. Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Have the damaged tyre replaced at the workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous as it can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Do not carry on driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower.**
- **Seek expert assistance.**

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Fuses in the vehicle*

⇒ *Changing a blown fuse*

At the time of print we are unable to provide an up-to-date overview of the locations of the fuses for the electrical consumers. This is because the vehicle is under constant development, because fuses are assigned differently depending on the vehicle equipment level and because several consumers may use a single fuse. You can get more information about the fuse layout from a Volkswagen dealership.

Several electrical consumers could share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore fuses should only be replaced when the cause of the fault has been rectified. If a new fuse blows shortly after insertion, have the electrical system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Additional information and warnings:

- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*

WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
- **Avoid causing short circuits in the electrical system.**

WARNING

Using unsuitable or repaired fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injuries.

- **Never fit fuses that have a higher fuse protection limit. Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.**
- **Never repair a fuse.**
- **Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar objects to replace a fuse.**

NOTICE

- **To avoid damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, switch the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers off and remove the vehicle key from the ignition before changing a fuse.**
- **You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.**
- **Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.**

Fuses in the vehicle

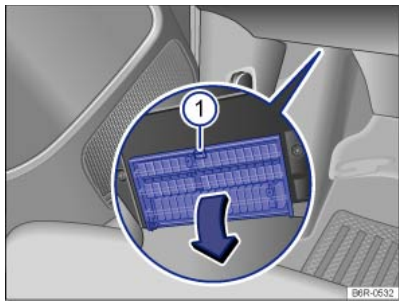


Fig. 158 Under the dash panel on the driver side: open the fuse box cover

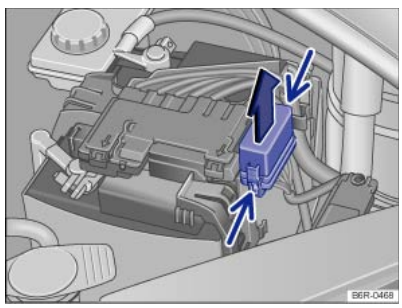


Fig. 159 In the engine compartment: remove the fuse box cover

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.

Colour coding of fuses under the dash panel

Colour	Amp rating
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or clear	25
Green	30
Orange	40

Opening and closing the fuse box under the dash panel

- *Opening*: push the locking lever ⇒ *Fig. 158①* until the cover can be opened.
- Fold the cover down.
- *Closing*: push the cover up in the opposite direction to the arrow until it perceptibly engages in the locking lever ①.

Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

- Open the bonnet ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.
- Press the release buttons in the direction of the arrow (thin arrow) ⇒ *Fig. 159* to release the fuse box cover.
- Lift off the cover.
- To **fit**, place the cover over the fuse box. Press the release buttons down in the opposite direction to the arrow until the release buttons click into place.

NOTICE

- **Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.**
- **Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.**

This chapter does not refer to all the fuses located in the vehicle. These should be changed only by a qualified workshop.

Changing a blown fuse

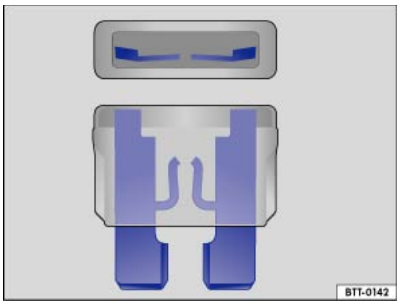


Fig. 160 A blown fuse

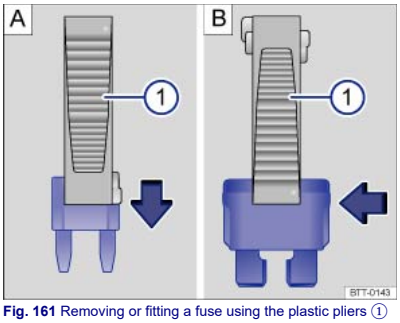


Fig. 161 Removing or fitting a fuse using the plastic pliers ①

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Preparation

- Switch off the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers.
- Open the appropriate fuse box ⇒ *Fuses in the vehicle*.

Detecting a blown fuse

A melted metal strip indicates that the fuse has blown ⇒ *Fig. 160*.

Shine a torch onto the fuse. This will help you to spot the blown fuse more easily.

Changing a fuse

- Take the plastic pliers ⇒ *Fig. 161*① out of the holder if needed. The holder is on the rear side of the fuse box near the diagnosis connection.
- For *small fuses*, push on the catch ⇒ *Fig. 161*① from above ⇒ *Fig. 161***A**.
- For *bigger fuses*, push the catch ⇒ *Fig. 161*① onto the fuse from the side ⇒ *Fig. 161***B**.
- Remove the fuse
- If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse of the *same* amp rating (same colour and same markings) and *same* size ⇒.
- Insert the cover again or close the fuse box cover.
- If used, replace the pliers in the holder behind the fuse box.

NOTICE

You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.

Changing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *Information on changing bulbs*
⇒ *Changing bulbs in the front headlights*
⇒ *Changing bulbs in the front bumper*
⇒ *Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster*
⇒ *Changing the bulb in the number plate light*
⇒ *Changing bulbs in the side turn signals*

Changing the vehicle bulbs requires considerable technical skill. If you do not feel confident with the procedure, Volkswagen recommends that you have the bulbs changed by a Volkswagen dealership, or that you seek other expert assistance. Contact a qualified workshop if other vehicle parts around the lights need to be removed.

You should keep a box with spare light bulbs for the lights that ensure the vehicle is roadworthy in the vehicle at all times. Spare bulbs are available from Volkswagen dealerships. In some countries it is a legal requirement to have these spare bulbs in the vehicle.

It may be illegal to drive with a defective bulb in the exterior lighting.

Additional bulb specifications

Some bulbs in headlights or in tail light clusters might have factory specifications that are different to standard bulbs. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Lights and vision ⇒ *Lights and vision*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Vehicle toolkit ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*
- Fuses ⇒ *Fuses*

WARNING

Accidents can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.

WARNING

Changing the bulb incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- When working in the engine compartment, always read and observe the safety warnings *⇒ Preparation for working in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.
- H4, HB4 and H7 bulbs are pressurised and could explode when they are being changed.
- Only change the defective bulb once it has had time to cool down completely.
- Never change a bulb unless you are familiar with the procedure. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. When the light is switched on, heat will cause fingerprints to evaporate on the bulb, which in turn will cause the reflector to dim.
- There are sharp-edged parts in the headlight housing in the engine compartment and on the tail light cluster housing. Protect your hands when changing bulbs.

NOTICE

Damage to the electrical system could be caused by water entering the system if the rubber cover on the headlight housing is not properly mounted.

Information on changing bulbs

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions for changing a bulb in the given order ⇒:

✓ Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.

✓ Apply the handbrake firmly Braking, stopping and parking.

✓ Turn the light switch to position 0 Lights.

✓ Shift the turn signal lever to neutral Lights.

✓ Automated manual gearbox: move the selector lever to D or R Changing gear.

✓ Stop the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine.

✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Changing gear.

✓ Leave the defective bulbs to cool down.

✓ Check to see if a fuse has blown Fuses.

✓ Follow the instructions to change the affected bulb . Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

✓ Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. The heat of the bulb would cause the fingerprint to evaporate and condense on the reflector. This will impair the brightness of the headlight.

✓ After changing the bulb, check to ensure that the bulb is working properly. If the bulb is not working properly, the bulb may not have been inserted properly or may have failed again, or the connector may have been inserted incorrectly.

✓ Any time you change a bulb in the front of the vehicle, the headlight settings should be checked by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

NOTICE

Always take care when removing or fitting lights to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts.

Changing bulbs in the front headlights

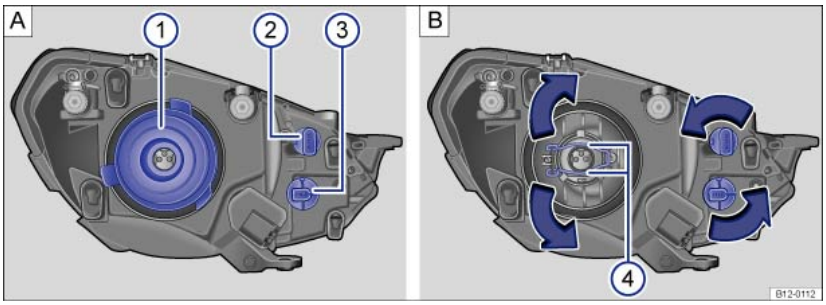


Fig. 162 In the engine compartment: rear view of the left-hand front headlight with rubber cover: ① dipped beam and main beam, ② side lights and daytime running lights, ③ turn signal and retaining clip ④

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The front headlight does not need to be removed when changing bulbs.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

⇒ Fig. 162	①	②	③
	Dipped beam and main beam headlights	**Side lights and daytime running lights**	**Front turn signal**
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist *⇒ Information on changing bulbs*.		
2.	Open the bonnet *⇒ Preparation for working in the engine compartment*.		
3.	Remove the connector from the H4 bulb. Pull off rubber cover using the tabs. Push retaining clip ④ in the direction of the arrow to the front, unhook at side and fold away.	Turn the bulb holder **anticlockwise** as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.	
4.	Remove bulb from bulb holder. If necessary, press the catch on the bulb holder.		
5.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.		
6.	Fit the new bulb, fold back the retaining clips ④ and hook in.	Insert the bulb holder into the headlight and turn it **clockwise** as far as it will go.	Insert the bulb holder into the headlight and turn it **clockwise** as far as it will go.
7.	Put the rubber cover on and check if it is fitted securely. Attach connector to the H4 bulb.		

The illustrations show the left-hand headlight from the rear. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.

Changing bulbs in the front bumper

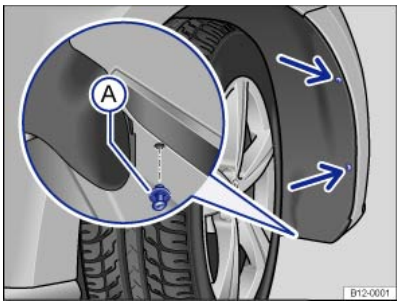


Fig. 163 In the wheel housing front right: removing the securing bolts (arrows) and the spreader rivet Ⓐ

Fig. 164 Changing the bulbs in the headlights

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ *Information on changing bulbs*.
2.	Use the screwdriver from the toolkit to unscrew the two securing bolts in the wheel housing trim ⇒ *Fig. 163* (arrows) ⇒ *Vehicle toolkit*.
3.	Unscrew the front spreader rivet at the bottom of the wheel housing trim ⇒ *Fig. 163Ⓐ* and remove it completely.
4.	Grip the edge of the wheel housing trim in between the holes for the securing bolts and push it gently towards the vehicle interior to release the clip located behind the trim.
5.	Carefully push the wheel housing trim to one side.
6.	Release the connector ⇒ *Fig. 164Ⓘ* and pull it off.
7.	Turn the bulb holder ⇒ *Fig. 164***anticlockwise** in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.
8.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
9.	Insert the bulb holder into the headlight and turn it **clockwise** as far as it will go.
10.	Connect the connector ⇒ *Fig. 164Ⓘ* to the bulb holder. The connector should click into place.
11.	Return the wheel housing trim to its original position, ensuring that the clip engages.
12.	Insert the spreader river in the wheel housing trim and the bumper and push in fully ⇒ *Fig. 163Ⓐ*.
13.	Use the screwdriver to screw in the two securing bolts ⇒ *Fig. 163* (arrows).

Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster

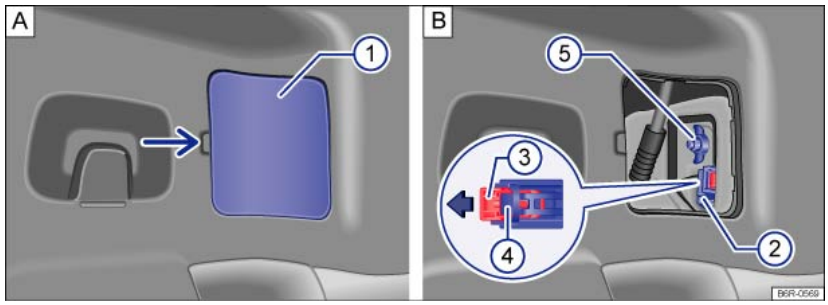


Fig. 165 In the side of the luggage compartment: A: removing the cover, B: removing the tail light cluster

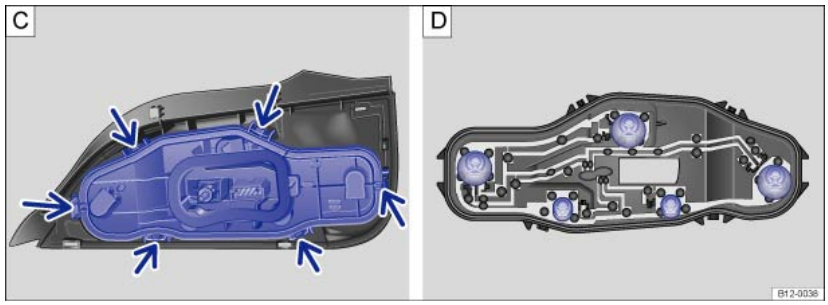


Fig. 166 Tail light cluster: C: removing the bulb holder, B: removing the bulbs

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒

Introduction

The steps should only be carried out in the specified order.

Removing the tail light cluster

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ *Information on changing bulbs*.
2.	Open the tailgate ⇒ *Tailgate*.
3.	Carefully lever off the cover ① ⇒ *Fig. 165* **A**.
4.	Pull the lock ③ on the connector ② in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 165* **B**. Use the screwdriver from the vehicle tools for this purpose.
5.	Press the catch ④ and pull off the connector ② ⇒ *Fig. 165* **B**.

6.	Remove the wing nut ⑤ ⇒ *Fig. 165* **B**.
7.	Carefully pull the tail light cluster out and remove it from the body.
8.	Remove the tail light cluster and place it on a clean, flat surface.

Changing the bulb

9.	Release the bulb holder at the tabs (arrows) ⇒ *Fig. 166* **C** and remove the bulb holder from the rear light cluster.
10.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type ⇒ *Fig. 166* **D**.
11.	Insert the bulb holder into the tail light cluster. The release tabs (arrows) ⇒ *Fig. 166* **C** must click into place.

Fitting the tail light cluster

12.	Carefully put the tail light cluster into the opening in the body.
13.	Use one hand to hold the tail light cluster in the fitting position while using the other hand to tighten the wing nut ⑤ ⇒ *Fig. 165* **B**.
14.	Check that the tail light cluster is positioned correctly and securely.
15.	Fit the connector ② to the bulb holder and push in the catch ③ against the direction shown by the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 165* **B**.
16.	Replace the cover. The cover must engage fully and securely.
17.	Close the tailgate ⇒ *Tailgate*.

Changing the bulb in the number plate light

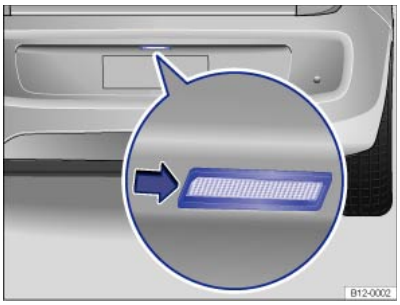


Fig. 167 In the rear bumper: removing the number plate light

Fig. 168 Number plate light: removing the bulb holder

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

A normal flat screwdriver can be used to remove the number plate light ⇒(!).

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ *Information on changing bulbs*.
2.	With one hand, push the number plate light from the left to the right and take out of the bumper ⇒ *Fig. 167*.
3.	Carefully lift the number plate light slightly out of the bumper.
4.	Turn the bulb holder with the bulb **anticlockwise** and remove in direction of arrow ⇒ *Fig. 168*.
5.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
6.	Insert the bulb holder into the number plate light and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 168*.
7.	Carefully insert the number plate light with the left edge in the opening in the bumper. When doing this, ensure that the number plate light is inserted in the right direction, i.e. the spring must be on the right-hand side.
8.	Push the number plate light into the bumper until it clicks into place.

NOTICE

Before inserting the screwdriver, slide a piece of paper (or similar) in between the screwdriver and the bumper in order to prevent any damage to the paintwork on the bumper.

Changing bulbs in the side turn signals

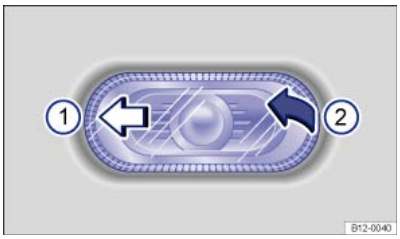


Fig. 169 Removing the side turn signal bulb

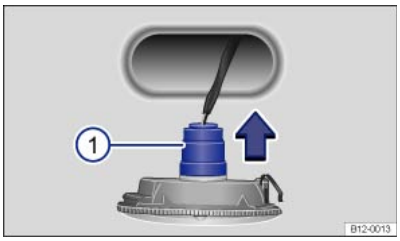


Fig. 170 Side turn signal: changing the bulb

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ *Information on changing bulbs*.
2.	With one hand, push the side turn signal to the front ⇒ *Fig. 169①*.
3.	Manually lever the side turn signal out of the vehicle body ②.
4.	Pull the bulb and bulb holder out in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 170①*.
5.	Pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.
6.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
7.	Replace the bulb holder.
8.	Insert the side turn signal into the body, with the side facing the rear of the vehicle first. Push it in until the spring on the other side of the side turn signal engages.

Starting the engine with jump leads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:
⇒ *How to start the engine using jump leads*

If the engine fails to start because the vehicle battery is flat, the flat battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Before using jump leads, check the window on the vehicle battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.

Jump leads must comply with DIN 72553 (see manufacturer's documentation). On petrol engine vehicles, the conductor must have a cross-section of at least 25 mm^2.

Additional information and warnings:

- Pull-away assist systems ⇒ *Pull-away assist systems*
- Preparation for working in the engine compartment ⇒ *Preparation for working in the engine compartment*
- Battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*

WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries. Please note the following in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- **All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.**
- **The vehicle battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the discharged vehicle battery (12 volt) and approximately the same capacity (see markings on battery).**
- **Never charge a vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).**
- **The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.**
- **A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.**
- **Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.**
- **Position the jump leads so that they never come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.**
- **Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.**

NOTICE

Please note the following in order to avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system:

- **A short circuit can be caused if the jump leads are wrongly connected.**
- **The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.**

How to start the engine using jump leads

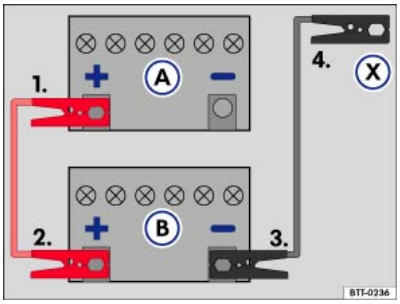


Fig. 171 How to connect the jump leads when starting vehicles without start/stop system: discharged battery Ⓐ and battery providing assistance Ⓑ

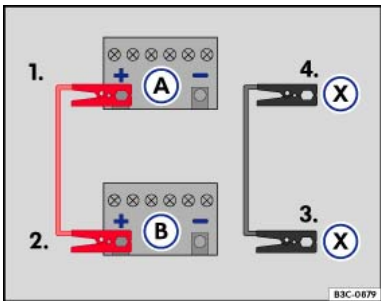


Fig. 172 How to connect the jump leads when starting vehicles with start/stop system: discharged battery Ⓐ and battery providing assistance Ⓑ

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠ *Introduction*

Ⓐ Vehicle with discharged battery that is being jump-started.

Ⓑ Vehicle with vehicle battery that is supplying power and jump-starting the other vehicle.

⊠ Suitable earth connection. A solid metal part that is firmly bolted to the engine block, the engine block itself or, where fitted, the screwed-in towing eye at the front ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

The vehicles must not touch. Otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Ensure that the battery clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute.

The steps should only be carried out in the specified order.

Attaching the jump leads

- Switch off the ignition in both vehicles ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.
- If necessary, open the battery cover in the engine compartment ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
- Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal ⇒ *Fig. 171*⊕ or ⇒ *Fig. 172*⊕ in the vehicle with the discharged battery Ⓐ ⇒⚠.
- Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal ⊕ in the vehicle providing assistance Ⓑ.
- In vehicles **without start/stop system:** connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal ⊖ in the vehicle providing assistance Ⓑ ⇒ *Fig. 171*.
- In vehicles **with start/stop system:** connect one end of the *black* jump lead Ⓧ to a suitable earth connection, to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder or to the cylinder block itself ⇒ *Fig. 172*.
- Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead Ⓧ to a solid metal component bolted on to the engine block, or onto the engine block in the vehicle with the discharged battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery Ⓐ ⇒⚠.
- Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing assistance and let it run at idle.
- Start the engine of the car with the discharged vehicle battery and wait two or three minutes until the engine is running smoothly.

Removing the jump leads

- Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
- Turn on the heater blower and rear window heater in the vehicle battery with the discharged battery. This helps minimise the voltage peaks generated when the leads are disconnected.
- With the engines running, disconnect the jump leads in the exact reverse order to the instructions given above.
- Close the battery cover.

⚠ WARNING

Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to serious injuries. Please note the following in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- **All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.**
- **Always wear suitable eye protection and never lean over the vehicle battery.**
- **Attach the connector cables in the correct order – the positive cable first, followed by the negative.**
- **Never connect the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or to the brake lines.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive vehicle battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle.**
- **Check the window on the vehicle battery using a torch if necessary. If the display is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.**
- **Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks.**
- **Do not use jump leads to start the engine if the vehicle battery is damaged or if it is or has ever been frozen.**

Tow-starting and towing

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Notes on tow-starting*

⇒ *Notes on towing*

⇒ *Fitting the front towing eye*
⇒ *Driving tips when towing*

Observe any legal requirements when towing or tow-starting.

For technical reasons, vehicles with a discharged battery must not be tow-started.

For technical reasons, vehicles with an automated manual gearbox must not be tow started unless it has been ascertained that the gearbox is in position N ⇒ *When a vehicle with an automated manual gearbox has to be towed:*.

Towing a vehicle when the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on discharges the vehicle battery. In some vehicles battery charge level, the drop in voltage can be large enough after just a few minutes that electrical consumers in the vehicle will no longer function, e.g. the hazard warning lights.

Additional information and warnings:

- Exterior views ⇒ *Exterior views*
- Changing gear ⇒ *Changing gear*
- Engine management system and exhaust purification system ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system*
- Starting the engine with jump leads ⇒ *Starting the engine with jump leads*

WARNING

Never tow a vehicle that has no power supply.

- **Never remove the key from the ignition. This could cause the steering lock to engage suddenly. You will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. This can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.**
- **If the power supply to the towed vehicle is disconnected, stop towing immediately and seek expert assistance.**

WARNING

If a vehicle is being towed, the vehicle handling and braking effect will change significantly. Please note the following in order to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injuries:

- **Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:**
  - You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Always be careful not to drive into the vehicle that is pulling your vehicle.
  - You will need to turn the steering wheel more vigorously as the power-assisted steering function is not working.
- **Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle**
  - Accelerate carefully and gently.
  - Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
  - Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.

NOTICE

- **Remove and install the cover and the towing eye carefully so as to avoid damage to the vehicle, e.g. the paintwork.**
- **Unburnt fuel can enter the catalytic converter and damage it while the vehicle is being towed.**

You will not be able to fit a towing eye onto the rear bumper. The vehicle is not suited for towing other vehicles.

Notes on tow-starting

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

Vehicles should not be tow-started wherever possible. Use jump leads to start the engine instead ⇒ *Starting the engine with jump leads*.

For technical reasons, the following vehicles **cannot** be tow-started:

- If the vehicle battery has discharged, the engine control unit will not function properly.

However, if the vehicle still has to be tow-started (manual gearbox):

- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.

- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Once both vehicles are in motion, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and put the gear into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

However, if the vehicle still has to be tow-started (automated manual gearbox):

- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Place the selector lever in position **N**.
- When both vehicles are in motion and the brake pedal indicator lamp goes out, move the selector lever to position **D**.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to position **N**. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

NOTICE

When tow-starting, unburnt fuel can enter the catalytic converter and damage it.

Notes on towing

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒ *Introduction*

Tow rope or tow bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow bar. Only use a tow rope if you do not have a tow bar.

The tow rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the strain on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope or tow bar to the specially provided towing eyes or to the towing bracket.

When a vehicle with a manual gearbox has to be towed:

Check whether the vehicle can be towed ⇒ *When should your vehicle not be towed?*.

- Move the gear stick to neutral ⇒ *Changing gear*.
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed at speeds faster than 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Do not have the vehicle towed further than 50 km (30 miles).

When a vehicle with an automated manual gearbox has to be towed:

Check whether the vehicle can be towed ⇒ *When should your vehicle not be towed?*

- Switch on the ignition.
- Move the selector lever to **N**⇒ *Changing gear*.
- Check whether the automated manual gearbox is really in neutral. To do this drive the car a few metres as a test. The automated manual gearbox is in neutral if the vehicle can be easily moved.
- Seek expert assistance if the automated manual gearbox cannot be put into neutral ⇒.
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed at speeds faster than 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Do not have the vehicle towed further than 50 km (30 miles).
- If a breakdown truck is used, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels raised.

When should your vehicle not be towed?

- If, due to damage, the vehicle gearbox no longer contains any lubricant.
- If the automated manual gearbox cannot be put into neutral ⇒.
- If the distance to be towed is further than 50 km - applies to vehicles with an automated manual gearbox only.
- If the steering function or the operating clearance of the wheels cannot be ensured, e.g. after an accident.

NOTICE

Never tow a vehicle with automated manual gearbox if the automated manual gearbox cannot be put into neutral. Otherwise, the gearbox and engine can suffer considerable damage.

The vehicle can only be towed when the handbrake and steering lock are not engaged.

Fitting the front towing eye

Fig. 173 On the right-hand side of the front bumper: releasing and removing the cover

Fig. 174 Front bumper, right-hand side: screwing in the towing eye

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right of the front bumper *⇒ Fig. 173*.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Comply with the notes on towing *⇒ Notes on towing*.

Fitting the towing eye at front

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle toolkit in the luggage compartment *⇒ Vehicle toolkit*.
- Press at the bottom of the cover *⇒ Fig. 173①* to release the cover.
- Pull the cover forwards to remove it ② and leave it to hang on the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye **anticlockwise** into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible *⇒ Fig. 174*. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it **clockwise**.
- Insert the lower locking lug in the opening in the bumper and guide the upper locking lug carefully over the edge of the opening. If necessary, press the upper locking lug from above.
- Push on the upper area of the cover until the lower locking lug engages in the bumper.

NOTICE

The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is being tow-started or towed.

Driving tips when towing

First read and observe the introductoryinformation and safety warnings⇒⚠

Introduction

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

When driving, ensure that you do not pull too hard on the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking movements. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

You can still use the turn signals if your vehicle is towed with the hazard warning lights and ignition switched on. Move the turn signal lever to signal the required direction. The hazard warning lights will not flash while the turn signal is being used. The hazard warning lights will start flashing automatically as soon as the turn signal lever is moved back to the neutral position.

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:

- Leave the ignition switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking, and so that the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers can be used.
- As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.

- You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Do not drive too close to the towing vehicle.
- Read and comply with the information and notes in the owner's manual of the towing vehicle.

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid any sudden driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.
- Read and comply with any information and notes in the owner's manual of the towed vehicle.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Revolutions per minute – engine speed.
ABS	Anti-lock brake system.
AG5	5-speed automated manual gearbox.
TCS	Traction control system.
BAS	Brake Assist system.
ccm	Cubic centimetres. Unit of displacement.
CNG	Compressed Natural Gas.
CO_2	Carbon dioxide.
DIN	German Standards Authority (Deutsches Institut für Normung).
DRL	Daytime running lights.
EBD	Electronic brake pressure distribution system.
EDL	Electronic differential lock.
EU	European Union.
EN	European standard.
EPC	Engine management system (electronic power control).
ESC	Electronic stabilisation programme.
EEC	European Economic Community.
VIN	Vehicle identification number
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per kilometre.
CCS	Cruise control system.
kN	Kilonewton, pulling power.
kp	Kilopond, pulling power.
kPa	Kilopascal, value for tyre inflation pressure.
kW	Kilowatt, engine power.
LED	Light-emitting diode.
MFD	Multifunction display.
EC	Engine code.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.
MG5	5-speed manual gearbox.
TC	Traction control.
TINT	Tyre identification number (TIN).
trip	Trip recorder.
TWI	Tread wear indicator.

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its vehicles. Please understand that we must therefore reserve the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The data provided concerning scope of delivery, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards and vehicle functions are all correct at the time of going to print. Some of the equipment described might not yet be available in a particular vehicle (information can be provided by your local Volkswagen dealership), and some equipment may not be available in certain countries. No legal commitment may be inferred from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

Printed in Germany.